

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google<sup>™</sup> books

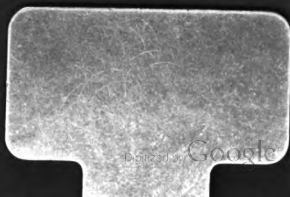
<http://books.google.com>







6001006830







THE  
RITUAL REASON WHY.

EDITED BY

CHARLES WALKER,

*Author of "The Liturgy of the Church of Sarum," &c., &c.*

"WHAT MEAN YE BY THIS SERVICE?"—EXOD. xii. 26.



LONDON:  
J. T. HAYES, LYALL PLACE, EATON SQUARE.

LONDON :  
J. SWIFT, REGENT PRESS, 55, KING STREET,  
REGENT STREET, W.

TO AN  
EPISCOPAL DEFENDER OF CEREMONIAL,  
THE LORD BISHOP OF VERMONT, U.S.,  
IT SEEMS NOT UNFITTING  
THAT I DEDICATE A TRACTATE  
HAVING FOR ITS SUBJECT  
THE WHY AND THE WHEREFORE OF RITUAL OBSERVANCES.





## P R E F A C E.

---

WITH the single exception of Mr. Lee's Sermons on External Religious Observances, the writer of the following pages knows of no work designed to give a *rationale* of Ceremonial worship; and yet that there is room for such a treatise seems sufficiently obvious. Not only is much of the opposition to Ritual due to a mistaken or inadequate view of its meaning and intention, but Scripture itself teaches us the duty of instructing the people in the rationale of Divine Ceremonial; the objective end of which is that it "may be a sign among us, that when our children ask—what *mean* ye by these" things, we may "ANSWER them." (Josh. iv. 6.) In the present little work an attempt has been made to fill up the able outline supplied by Mr. Lee in the book referred to,<sup>1</sup> and it is hoped that by

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Beauty of Holiness. Ten Lectures on External Religious Observances.* By the Rev. F. G. Lee, F.S.A. London: G. J. Palmer.

the help of a copious Index, the sincere enquirer will be able to obtain a ready explanation of *every* custom which is ordinarily to be met with in Churches where the ceremonial of Divine worship receives that degree of care which it surely demands.

But it ought to be said at the outset, that the author's design has been rather to provide a book of *reference*—hence the care that has been taken to make the Index as complete as possible—than one of study. It is not (except incidentally) a defence of, or an apology for, Ritual; still less does it pretend to any *critical* correctness in dealing with the subject. The writer was quite content to take the Prayer Book as he found it, and to treat of such ritual observances as have actually gathered round it; it was manifestly out of his province to weigh the comparative merits of various Liturgies, or to suggest improvements in any of the *minutiæ* of the actual system, which under the name of "Ritualism" has of late been attracting so much attention. The "vexed questions" of ritual, such as the use or disuse of the stole in the Choir-services, have not been entered into, on similar grounds, or at most have been

merely alluded to in passing, in order to give the reasons which have led to the adoption of varying "uses." There is another reason why this distinction should be borne in mind. A book of this kind, to be of any practical value, must necessarily be complete; and so a person reading it from cover to cover would meet with many observances, all of which are of more or less frequent use among us, but comprising an aggregate, which is probably to be met with in no single Church throughout the length and breadth of the land. The author would be sorry to convey the impression that every feature of which he furnishes the *rationale* is a necessary part of religious ceremonial—an impression which *might* be given by a mere perusal of these pages, but which would be avoided by its use as a book of *reference* solely.

He would beg, therefore, to call the reader's attention again to the Index, as the cardinal feature of the present book. By having recourse to it, each one may obtain *exactly* the information which he wants, without wading through a mass of matter, which is either totally uninteresting to him, or already perfectly intelligible. Thus, one who thoroughly under-

stands the why and the wherefore of lights and incense, may yet be at sea on the special matter of vestments. The Index will at once refer him to the third section (pp. 14-27), where he will find his queries anticipated and answered. Another may wish to see the reasons for making the sign of the Cross in general: the Index will refer him to Paragraph 179, which he will readily find on page 68. To a third none of these may present any difficulties: but he is at a loss to know why the sign of the Cross should be made at this or that particular part of the service. To such an one the ever-ready Index will at once point out paragraph 178. To many the broad features of Ritual are sufficiently intelligible, while they are quite unable to comprehend such niceties as the inflexion of the last two clauses of the Lord's Prayer, or the intonation of the Psalms; or (to take a more strictly ceremonial illustration) the use of incense is to many acceptable, because intelligible, whereas the incensing of altar and choir are a stumbling block, because apparently devoid of meaning or purpose.<sup>1</sup> Recourse to the Index will

---

<sup>1</sup> It may be well to add that this was written prior to the temporary disuse of this ancient and statutable custom,

furnish these with the information they seek, without involving the perusal of whole pages of extraneous matter. In this the author would have his readers pursue the same course as they would with a book of household receipts, or other domestic hints. There is no harm in reading a cookery-book from title-page to index, provided you do not in the process imbibe the idea that an intimate acquaintance with all the recipes given is necessary to the production of a passable meal.

The writer has had mainly in view that large class of persons, to whom—as lacking any opportunity for studying the matter at all systematically—simplicity would be a necessary passport. Hence recondite and far-fetched explanations, such as abound in the works of Durandus, Bona, and the like, have been as far as possible avoided; though of course *any* mystical interpretation will appear fanciful to some. On the other hand, as it was impossible to avoid going at times rather more deeply into the matter than might appear desirable to the general reader, an attempt has been made to

---

which has been judged advisable in some quarters in the face of existing (but surely groundless) prejudice.—Ed.

distinguish the less obvious explanations by the employment of a smaller type. For the same reason the editor judged it better to lay himself open to possible charges of "private interpretation," than to impart an aspect of erudition to his book, and at the same time considerably increase its bulk, by a multiplicity of notes and references to authorities. A single instance (and one perhaps more than usually suggestive of the charge alluded to) will suffice to show how freely restraint has been used in this respect, and also, it is trusted, will serve to illustrate the desire of the writer to follow accredited writers on the subject, and to give the "Reason why" of Ritual in their sense rather than his own. Let us take then the note to paragraph 144, which deals with the use of five Psalms at Lauds and four at Vespers, and so incidentally with the corresponding divisions of the 119th Psalm at Matins and Evensong, in the monthly course of the Psalter; with the authorities it would run thus :—

"The reason for this division would appear to be as follows :—Matins being sung in the day-time, represents our life of probation here,<sup>1</sup> during which we brace our-

---

<sup>1</sup> So the "Myrroure" interprets Lauds. (Fo. xlv.)

selves up to our labour, by contemplating the Passion of our Lord,<sup>1</sup> in which He received His *five* wounds. But Evensong, which is sung at nightfall, represents the 'rest which remaineth for the people of God,'<sup>2</sup> when we shall join in that perpetual 'service of song' before the throne of God in the New Jerusalem, the City 'that lieth four-square.' (Rev. xxi. 16.) So too in our active life here on earth, we attain to holiness by watching over and consecrating our *five* senses<sup>3</sup>: while in the life of contemplation in glory we shall rejoice before God in the *four* transcendent qualities of the resurrection body: clarity, agility, impassibility, and subtlety.<sup>4</sup> . . . ."

Almost every paragraph might be treated in the same way.

In one case<sup>5</sup> the writer feels that he has

<sup>1</sup> St. Anselm Incent. amor. a. 17; St. Bern. Serm. de Pentec.; Albertus Magnus, Roset. Spir. Exercit. 22; De Ponte, Medit. par. iv., in Introd. &c.

<sup>2</sup> St. Bern. Serm. in Cant. 57; Bona, De Div. Psal. 10, &c. Compline (which by the bye has *four* psalms) is thus explained by mystical writers, who see in its unvarying Antiphon a type of the unchanging and unfading glory of heaven.

<sup>3</sup> A Kempis, De Imit. Christi, lib. iii. c. 12; Rodriguez, De Christiana Perfect. tom. ii. Tract. 1.

<sup>4</sup> St. Thomas Aquinas. quest. lxxxii. addit.; De Ponte, Meditations, vi. 52, and others.

<sup>5</sup> Perhaps the distinguishing of the folded chasuble, worn by the Deacon and Subdeacon in penitential seasons as "planeta," will be considered another instance. "Casula" and "planeta" are used indifferently to describe the chasuble, whether worn sacrificially by the Celebrant,



ventured to deal with his subject critically; and that his doing so demands a word of explanation. He has differed from many ritualists in regarding the Commemoration of the Departed in the Prayer for the Church Militant as a *Memoria de Sanctis* solely, and has relegated the Memento of the Dead, properly so called, to the Post Communion Prayer. The whole subject is surrounded with difficulties, but they do not appear to be increased at all in this hypothesis, the advantages of which are patent,—the distinct commemoration of the *three* classes: the faithful on earth, the Saints and the Departed in general, and the position of the Consecration between the two mementoes—a piece of symbolic arrangement which the Petrine family of liturgies has ever presented. The great difficulty, perhaps, is the desire to get both mementoes *within* the Canon. But the present writer must candidly profess his inability to regard the Prayer for the Church Militant, coming as it does *before* the Preface, as a part of the English Canon. The position of all the Intercessions *outside* the

---

or "*plicata*" by his assistants; though to the appearance of the vestment when folded may be traced the latter term.

Canon which this view involves, is not surely a greater anomaly than the introduction of exhortation, and the preparation of communicants into the middle of the Canon, which the common theory supposes. The truth appears to be, that the present English Church intercedes for the living, and commemorates the Saints *at the first Oblation*, instead of in the Canon prior to Consecration; and in like manner pleads the Sacrifice for the Departed after the Communion of the people, instead of in the Canon immediately subsequent to Consecration. In the first Liturgy of Edward VI. both mementoes had their legitimate place, the one in the Prayer for the Church Militant *immediately* before the Prayer of Consecration; the other in the prayer now used at the Post Communion, *immediately* after.

To two classes of persons this book will be perfectly valueless : to those who cannot grasp the doctrines of which Ritual is the expression, and to those dilettantists who admire ceremonial because it is pretty or poetical, or supplies an object on which to employ their leisure thoughts. But to those who, like the wise man, would apply their hearts "to know and to search . . . the reason of things," and especially of the things

that belong to the service and worship of Almighty God, it may not be wholly valueless. If it should at all tend to consolidate the essential connection between dogma and ceremonial, it will not have been written in vain; for ritual divorced from truth is of all things the most melancholy: it is worse than the Shadowless Man of the German fictionist—it is a shadow without a substance, and an engine of Satan for the snaring of souls.

*Brighton, St. Hugh, 1866.*

## INDEX TO SECTIONS.

---

	PAGE
<b>Section i.—Paragraphs 1-9</b> .. .. .	1
„ <b>ii.—THE ARRANGEMENT AND ORNAMENTS OF</b> <b>THE CHURCH, par. 10-29</b> .. .. .	8
„ <b>iii.—ORNAMENTS OF THE MINISTERS, par. 30-74</b>	14
„ <b>iv.—FEASTS AND FASTS, par. 75-120</b> .. ..	28
„ <b>v.—MATINS AND EVENSONG, par. 121-191</b> ..	41
„ <b>vi.—SOLEMN TE DEUM, par. 192-194</b> .. ..	72
„ <b>vii.—THE LITANY, par. 195-197</b> .. .. .	73
„ <b>viii.—PROCESSIONS, par. 198-203</b> .. .. .	75
„ <b>ix.—LOW CELEBRATION, par. 204-332</b> .. ..	79
„ <b>x.—HIGH OR SOLEMN CELEBRATION, par. 333-</b> <b>371</b> .. .. .	147
„ <b>xi.—THE OCCASIONAL SERVICES, par. 372-406</b>	164
„ <b>xii.—CEREMONIES PECULIAR TO CERTAIN SEA-</b> <b>SONS, par. 407-448..</b> .. .. .	177

### APPENDIX.

„ <b>xiii.—THE COTTA, ROCHET, AND BIRETTA, par.</b> <b>449-454</b> .. .. .	197
<b>Note A.—“ On Minute Details in Ritual ”</b> .. ..	200

“ And here is to be noted, that such Ornaments of the Church, and of the Ministers thereof, at all times of their Ministration, shall be retained, and be in use, as were in this Church of *England*, by the Authority of Parliament, in the Second Year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth.”—*Rubric in Book of Common Prayer.*

“ Whosoever through his private judgement, willingly and purposely, doth openly break the traditions and ceremonies of the Church, which be not repugnant to the Word of God, and be ordained and approved by common authority, ought to be rebuked openly, (that others may fear to do the like,) as he that offendeth against the common order of the Church.”—*Article xxxi.*

# THE RITUAL "REASON WHY."

---

"What mean ye by this Service?"

---

## 1. *What is Ritual?*

—It is the employment of symbols in Divine worship according to a recognised or traditional system.

## 2. *To what end are symbols thus employed?*

—Partly to uphold the dignity of Divine worship; and partly to shadow forth by outward deed and gesture certain truths, which might otherwise be lost sight of. In other words: for the glory of God, and the edification of His people.

## 3. *How is God glorified by symbolic worship?*

—In many ways. Because He is the God of

truth, He is glorified by that which is the representative and guardian of truth. Because He is the Lord and Creator of all, He is fitly honoured by that which employs not merely the *intellect*, but the *senses*, not merely the *soul*, but the *body* of His children; and by which the inanimate creation is pressed into the service of the sanctuary. Because He is the God of Order, He is glorified by that which ensures *care*, even about the comparative trifles of His service, and which precludes slovenliness. While, as the Giver of all good things, He is fitly honoured by symbols which are more or less of a *costly* nature.

#### 4. *Is this view Scriptural?*

—Yes. The minute directions given under the old Law about the types and symbols to be employed in the Tabernacle shew that God was glorified by ceremonies which as the shadows of things to come were the outward signs of spiritual truth: and that He willed to be worshipped by the bodily senses not less than by the spirit: while the case of David, who “would not offer to the Lord his God of that which did cost him nothing,” and the direction that His

people were not to appear empty before the Lord, shew that a *costly* worship was sanctioned by God and was acceptable to Him.

5. *This was under the Old Law : can you adduce instances from the New Testament ?*

—Certainly. We have the express declaration of Our Lord that He came not to *destroy* the law but to *fulfil* it. He Himself was a frequent attendant at the Temple services. He constantly employed symbolic acts in His public ministry, as when He anointed the blind man with spittle, when He washed the disciples' feet, &c. And in instituting the Sacraments He made certain acts and gestures and certain bodily Elements the channels by which He would confer His grace.

6. *Do we find this system continued by the Apostles ?*

—We do. The disciples continued to attend the Temple services, and were constant in "the breaking of the Bread and in the prayers."<sup>1</sup> So

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts ii. 42 : τῇ κλάσει τοῦ ἄρτου καὶ ταῖς προσευχαῖς, i. e. the eucharistic breaking of bread, and the accompanying prayers. Such set forms or liturgies were of earliest date; so much so that St. Paul quotes from one; 1 Cor. ii. 9. Compare Liturgy of St. James.



too the Apostles *baptized* those that were converted; and *laid their hands* on those that were to receive the Holy Ghost, or to be set apart for the ministry. And we find St. Paul giving directions for the proper administration of the Lord's Supper, and promising to set the rest in order when he came. The same Apostle, to whom was committed the care of all the Churches, was most careful that "all things should be done decently and in order."<sup>1</sup>

7. *Can you give me any further instances?*

—There is the case of the woman that anointed the feet of our Lord with precious ointment, when Judas took exception to the *costly character* of this act of service. I may add also that it is the generally received opinion that the "cloak" which St. Paul left at Troas, was the Eucharistic vestment, the "parchments" he speaks of being the Liturgy:<sup>2</sup> and that the Apostle John is believed to have borrowed his imagery of the heavenly worship

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. xiv. 40: *κατὰ τάξιν*, according to (accustomed) form.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Tim. iv. 13: *φελόνην*, which is still the word employed in the Eastern liturgies to denote the Chasuble.

from that which was then customary in the Church.<sup>1</sup>

8. *Does ecclesiastical history support this view ?*

—Yes : the fact that the Eastern and Western Churches, differing so widely as they do in language, in the customs of their people, and in many minor points of ceremonial, should yet employ a system of symbolism in worship, essentially the same in all its broad principles, is in itself a proof. Nor is other wanting. Lights and incense are mentioned in the earliest liturgies. Even in the times of persecution, when Christians had to worship in dens and caves of the earth, the worship of God was conducted with splendour and costliness. Thus the historian Eusebius tells us that the magnificence of the sacred vessels inflamed the cupidity of the persecutors, as was the case with St. Lawrence, who suffered martyrdom A.D. 258, because he would not give up the treasures of the Church. St. Optatus testifies that in the Diocletian persecution the Churches had very

---

<sup>1</sup> Revelation, *passim*.

many ornaments of gold and silver. Prudentius thus speaks of the ornaments of the Church in Rome when St. Lawrence was martyred. The Priests offer in gold; the sacred Blood is received in silver chalices; in the nightly sacrifices the wax tapers are fixed in golden candlesticks." It is certain that as soon as the conversion of Constantine gave peace to the Church, Divine Worship was at once celebrated with great pomp and magnificence; and it is noticeable that Eusebius in speaking of the restoration of the Churches, and the dedication of new ones which then ensued, has handed down a sermon of his own, in which he speaks of St. Paulinus, bishop of Tyre, who had engaged himself in this work as "a new Bezaleel," of whom we read (Exod. xxxv. 31), that God filled him with wisdom of heart to work all manner of works of the engraver, and of the cunning workman, *and of the embroiderer*, in blue and in purple, and in scarlet, and in fine linen. In a word it is not too much to say that till the sixteenth century no Christian Church was deficient in the three leading characteristics of ritual — vestments, lights and incense.

9. As it does not enter into the scope of the present work to do more than glance at the historical evidence in favour of Ritual, the enquiring reader is referred to an excellent pamphlet of Dr. Littledale's: "Catholic Ritual in the Church of England" (Palmer): and the "Early Christian Ritual" of the same author.

## SECTION II.

### THE ARRANGEMENT AND ORNAMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

10. *What are the chief ornaments of the Church ?*

—The font, which is used in the administration of Baptism, and the altar, which serves for the celebration of the Holy Communion. To these may be added the pulpit and the seats in the chancel for the choir.

11. *I notice that the font is generally placed near the West door. Why is this ?*

—To show that Baptism is the gate by which we enter into the fold of Christ's Church.

12. *Why is the portion reserved for the choir marked off from the rest of the church by being raised, and sometimes by a screen ?*

—Because as the body of the church signifies the Church Militant, the choir is typical of the Church Triumphant in Heaven. The screen

represents the gate of death, by which we enter into the heavenly rest.

13. *Is not this screen generally surmounted by a cross ? Why is this ?*

—To show that it is by the Passion and Death of Christ alone that we can gain an entrance into Heaven.

14. *Why is the altar generally placed at the East end of the church ?*

—In token that Christ is the true Sun of Righteousness ; for which reason it has ever been the custom of the Church to worship towards the point where the sun rises.

15. *The altar, I perceive, is railed off from the chancel. Why is this ?*

—Partly from motives of reverence ; partly because the sanctuary is symbolical of the Holy of Holies, into which the priest entered to plead for the people ; or rather of that innermost Heaven where Our Great High Priest hath entered through the vail of His flesh, and where He ever maketh intercession for us, pleading the merits of His all-perfect Sacrifice.

16. *Why is the altar made so conspicuous ?*

—Because it is the holiest part of the church.

17. *How so ?*

—It is used in the highest act of Divine worship, the Holy Eucharist ; in which by the ministry of His Church the Eternal Son of God offers His Death and Passion to His Father. It is raised because Our Lord suffered on the *Mount* ; and is made of wood as representing the Cross ; or of stone as symbolical of the rock of Calvary.

18. *Why is the front of the altar covered with a veil or hanging ?*

—From motives of respect, and in order to mark the various seasons of the Church by hangings of different colours.

19. *What are these colours ?*

—They are generally these five ; white, red, violet, green, and black. But according to Old English use, blue, brown, grey, and yellow were also employed.

20. *How do you account for the employment of these colours ?*

—They appear to be an adaptation of the colours employed in the Tabernacle to the purposes of Christian symbolism.

21. *Why is the altar surmounted by a cross?*

—To remind us of the Death of Christ, which is especially shown forth in the Holy Eucharist.

22. *There are other ornaments of the altar besides the hangings and cross. Will you explain them?*

—There are two lights which burn at the time of the celebration, to signify that Christ is the true light of the world; and to represent His two natures, the Human and the Divine, both which He bears at the Right Hand of the Father in Heaven. Other lights are lit round and about the altar in festal seasons as a sign of spiritual joy, as St. Jerome testifies. The altar is also decked with flowers for the same reason, and in honour of Him who is the Rose of Sharon and the Lily of the Valley. All these are not placed on the altar proper (which is reserved for the sacred vessels directly employed in the offering of the Eucharistic Sacrifice), but on one or more shelves or steps, called the *Re-table*, and sometimes, but improperly, the *Super-altar*.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The "Super-Altar" is a small portable slab of stone, which is placed on Altars which lack a stone mensa, or have not been consecrated. In the East a linen napkin, which has been blessed by the Bishop, answers the purpose.



There is also a covering of silk, usually crimson, called the super-frontal, and a fair linen cloth covering the top and sides, and marked with five crosses.

23. *Why is the super-frontal generally crimson ?*

—As symbolical of the Blood-shedding of Our Lord. For a similar reason the fair linen cloth, which represents the winding-sheet in which the Dead Body of Our Saviour was wrapped at His Burial, is marked with five crosses as a memento of His five wounds.

24. *Is there any other furniture appointed for the sanctuary ?*

—Yes : there are the Credence, and the sedilia or seats for the clergy.

25. *What is the Credence ?*

—It is a table at which the elements are prepared.

26. *Why is this done at the Credence ?*

—Partly for convenience, partly out of reverence, so that the altar may be entirely reserved for the actual offering of the Holy Sacrifice ; and in

order that the elements may not be placed upon the altar before the oblation.

27. *When are the sedilia employed?*

—During the sermon. The celebrant occupies the seat nearest the altar if the seats are raised after the manner of steps, the deacon the next, then the sub-deacon. Otherwise the celebrant sits in the midst, the deacon at his right hand, the sub-deacon at his left.

28. *What is the meaning of this arrangement?*

—To mark the different degrees of dignity in those engaged in the service.

29. The other ornaments of the Church will be described in speaking of the Services in which they are used.

### SECTION III.

#### ORNAMENTS OF THE MINISTERS.

30. *Those who occupy the choir are vested in white. Will you explain the reason?*

—I have already said that the chancel is symbolical of Heaven. Those who occupy it as being more directly engaged in the service of God are clothed in fine linen, which is the righteousness of Saints.

31. *The surplice then is the ordinary choir dress?*

—Yes: it is worn over the cassock, which is the distinguishing mark of all engaged in God's service.

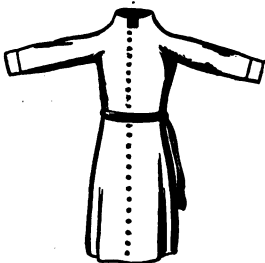
32. *What do these dresses signify?*

—The cassock, which entirely hides the ordinary dress, is emblematical of the spirit of recollection and devotion which becomes those who serve in the sanctuary: while the surplice represents the innocence of life and purity of

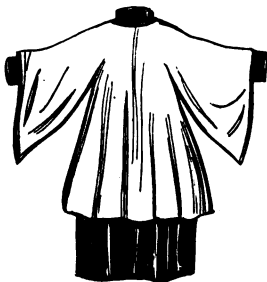
heart, without which our service will not be acceptable to God.

33. *Will you describe these dresses to me more in detail ?*

—The cassock is a long coat buttoning over the breast, and reaching to the feet. It is confined at the waist by a broad sash called the *cincture*. The collar is made to fasten tight round the throat.



34. The surplice is much shorter and fuller, and is made without any opening in front. The arms are of considerable width at the wrists, and the aperture at the neck is of sufficient width to enable the wearer to pass it over his head.



35. *Is there any other dress used in choir ?*

—Yes: on the more solemn occasions the girded alb and the cope are employed.



36. *What is the alb?*

—A linen vestment much longer than the surplice, and with tight sleeves like those of the cassock. It is confined at the waist by a girdle or sash.

37. *When is this vestment worn in choir?*

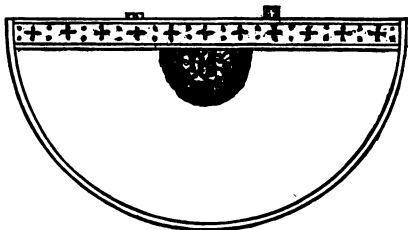
—In solemn celebrations of the Holy Eucharist.

38. *Why?*

—Because the choir are engaged in assisting the priest in the offering of the sacrifice. Hence they wear the alb, which is the sacrificial vestment.

39. *What is the cope?*

—A large semicircular cloak of silk or other



stuff, fastening in front by a clasp or morse. The straight piece is usually ornamented with a broad orphrey or strip of embroidery, the circular edge with a narrow. At the back is a piece of embroidery in the shape of a shield, called the *hood*.

40. *How is the cope employed ?*

—It is worn over the alb or surplice by the priest in procession and at solemn vespers, by the rulers of the choir, and by the bishop in certain ministrations.

41. *Of what is it symbolical ?*

—It is symbolical of rule, and is therefore worn by those who have dignity in the choir. It is not an Eucharistic but a choral vestment.

42. *Are there other choir habits ?*

—Yes : when the cope is not used the choral tippet, or the hood, and sometimes the stole are worn.

43. *What is the choral tippet ?*

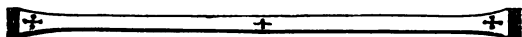
—A cape of black silk or stuff worn over the surplice, and reaching about half-way to the elbow.

44. *What is the hood ?*

—It differs from the tippet in colour, which varies according to the university and degree of the wearer; and is furnished at the back with a small hood, whence it derives its name.

45. *What is the Stole?*

—A narrow strip of silk passed over the neck, and hanging in front to about the knees of the wearer. It is usually ornamented with a cross at the neck and at either extremity. The ends are slightly expanded and fringed. It varies in colour (as does the cope) with the season.



46. *What are the Eucharistic Vestments?*

—The amice, alb, girdle, stole, maniple, tunic, dalmatic, and chasuble.

47. *Why are special vestments assigned to the Eucharist?*

—To mark the dignity of the service, and as symbolical of the Passion of Christ, which is therein commemorated.

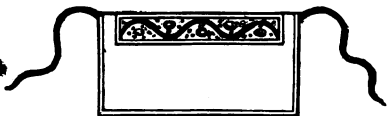
48. *Whence did the Church derive them?*

—Partly from the ordinary dress of apostolic times (preserving, however, a Syrian type out

of reverence to the earthly life of her Lord): partly from the symbolic dress of the Jewish Priesthood.

49. *What is the amice ?*

—A square piece of linen which is first placed on the head, and then, being fastened round the neck, is turned back to form a kind of collar.

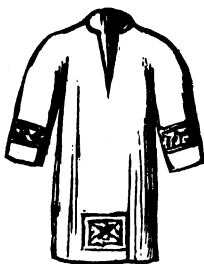


50. *What is its symbolical meaning ?*

—It is interpreted as representing the linen rag wherewith the Jews blindfolded our Saviour ; also as a type of the helmet of salvation, wherewith the good soldier of Jesus Christ is equipped.

51. *What is the alb ?*

—I have already described it as differing from the surplice in its greater length, and in the tightness of its sleeves. It is also generally made of finer linen ; and, as employed in the Eucharist,

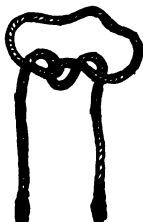




is ornamented with embroidery at the foot, before and behind, and at the sleeves. These patches of embroidery are called the *apparels*.

52. *Of what is the alb symbolical ?*

—It is, like the surplice, emblematical of purity and innocence, as also of the ministerial office (1 Sam. ii. 18, Rev. xv. 6). It is also held to represent the white garment in which Herod clothed our Saviour.



53. *What is the girdle ?*

—A white cord used to confine the alb at the waist.



54. *What is the maniple ?*

—It is in shape like the stole, but much smaller, and is worn by the priest, deacon, and sub-deacon over their left arm.

55. *How is the stole worn in the Eucharist ?*

—The celebrant wears it crossed over his breast; the deacon fastens it on his left shoulder, and crossing it over his breast secures the ends

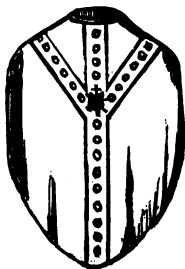
under his right arm. The sub-deacon does not wear it.

56. *What do these represent ?*

—The girdle is emblematic of the work of the Lord; to perform which the sacred ministers gird up as it were their loins: also of continence. The maniple is interpreted as an emblem of sorrow for sin. The stole represents the yoke of Christ, and is worn by the deacon over one shoulder only, as a sign of the subordination of his office. Lastly, all these are taken to represent the cords and fetters with which the officers bound Jesus.

57. *What is the principal vestment of the priest ?*

—The chasuble, an oval garment without sleeves, open at the sides, having an aperture at the neck through which he passes his head.




58. *What is the symbolic meaning of the chasuble ?*

—It represents the seamless vest of Christ : as also the purple garment, after being endued with which He was made to carry His Cross. It is also emblematic of charity.

59. *The chasuble, I observe, is embroidered with a cross on the back and a plain stripe in front.*<sup>1</sup> *Why is this ?*

—The cross is symbolical of that which Our Lord carried up the hill of Calvary ; the stripe of the pillar at which He was scourged. It reminds the priest that he must carry his cross

---

<sup>1</sup> In many parts of the Church, and especially in England, the Chasuble has a cross in front as well as behind. To this custom B. Thomas à Kempis refers in the *Imitation of Christ* (Bk. iv. ch. 5) : "Before him he (i.e. the Priest) beareth the Cross on the Chasuble, that he may diligently behold the footsteps of Christ, and fervently endeavour to follow after them. Behind him he is marked with the Cross that he may mildly suffer for God's sake whatsoever adversities befall him from others. He weareth the Cross before that he may bewail his own sins, and behind that he may lament the sins of others, and know that he standeth in the midst betwixt God and the sinner." The transverse beams of these crosses are generally placed at an acute instead of a right angle with the shaft (thus ): as this was the form taken by our Lord's arms when extended on the Cross. The Y-Cross, as it is called, thus reminds us of that *lifting up of His hands* (Psalm cxli. 2), which first on Calvary, and now by way of re-presentation on the altars of the Christian Church, is the true and acceptable Sacrifice.

after Christ, and must ever lean on Him as his true support.

60. *What are the principal vestments of the deacon and sub-deacon?*

—Of the deacon the dalmatic; of the sub-deacon the tunic. These vestments vary very slightly in form. The dalmatic is somewhat fuller and longer, and is generally more richly ornamented.



61. *What do these garments typify?*

—They represent the ministerial office; it being the duty of the deacon to minister to the priest, and the sub-deacon to the deacon.

62. *Do the deacon and sub-deacon always use these vestments?*

—No: sometimes they minister in the planeta or folded chasuble; or in albs and amices only.

63. *Why is this?*

—Because the dalmatic and tunic are considered

as festal garments, and so are not used in penitential seasons.

64. *What are these seasons ?*

—Advent and the season between Septuagesima and Easter,<sup>1</sup> which includes the Lent fast ; the four Ember seasons ; the Rogation days ; and the vigils of Saints' Days and festivals.

65. *Is the planeta always used then ?*

—No ; sometimes the Church is poor in vestments, and then the deacon and sub-deacon minister in their albs at these times, which they do according to old English use, under any circumstances on Good Friday, the Rogation days, and in funeral celebrations.

66. *Are there any exceptions to these rules ?*

—Yes ; the Vigils of Christmas, Easter, and Pentecost, and the Ember days in Whitsun-week.

67. *Are there any other observances connected with these penitential times ?*

—Yes ; the *Te Deum* is omitted at Mattins,

---

<sup>1</sup> According to Sarum use, the dalmatic and tunic are to be used on feasts falling at these times, although the *Te Deum* is not said.

and the choir do not use the girded alb. Formerly the *Gloria in Excelsis* was omitted in the Eucharist.

68. *You said that the stole varied in colour with the season. Is this the case with the other vestments?*

—The maniple, chasuble, dalmatic, tunic, and cope vary in the same manner.

69. *Will you explain these variations in colour?*

—These vestments are *White* on all the great festivals of our Lord, of the Blessed Virgin, and of all Saints who did not suffer martyrdom: white being the colour appropriated to joy, and signifying purity. *Red* is used on the feasts of martyrs, typifying that they shed their blood for the testimony of Jesus; also on the feasts of the Holy Cross—that Cross which was anointed with the Blood of the Lamb; and at Whitsuntide, when the Holy Ghost descended in the likeness of tongues of fire. *Violet* is the penitential colour, and is used in Advent, Lent, Vigils, &c. *Green* is the ordinary colour for days that are neither feasts or fasts, as being the pervading colour of nature, or as typifying

the Resurrection. *Black* is made use of at funerals, and on Good Friday.

70. *Are these colours always observed?*

—No ; many Churches do not possess complete sets of vestments, and in others the old English colours are followed.

71. *What are these?*

—They are the same as those above, but worn in a slightly different order, and with the addition of brown, grey, blue, and yellow.

72. *Will you explain to me this order?*

—Willingly. According to this use, *Red* is used on all Sundays throughout the year, except from Easter to Pentecost, unless a festival supersedes the Sunday services. The same colour serves for Ash Wednesday, Good Friday, Maundy Thursday, and Easter and Whitsun Eves. *White* is employed throughout Eastertide (*i. e.* from Easter to Whitsun Eve), whether the service be of Sunday, of a Saint's day, or of the feria, with the exception of the Invention of the Cross. (May 3.) *Yellow* is employed for the feasts of Confessors. *Blue* is used indifferently with green as the ferial colour ;

and *Brown* or *Grey* with violet for penitential times.

73. *Red*, in this Rite, is used in a twofold aspect : as a solemnly penitential colour (hence its use on Ash Wednesday and the three last days of holy week), and as an ordinary Dominical colour. It serves also for Whitsuntide, the feasts of martyrs, and of the Cross, for the reason given above. *Yellow* is symbolical of that "robe of glory" with which those who have confessed the Name of Jesus are clothed. *Blue* the colour of the firmament; *Brown* and *Grey* as expressive of the "sack-cloth" of mourning and penitence.

74. *What other vestments are used in the Eucharist?*

—The inferior ministers (*i. e.* the thurifer, acolytes, &c.) wear the alb and amice. The former generally differs from that used by the celebrant, deacon, and sub-deacon, in being shorter and confined by a broad sash in place of the girdle. (*See* paragraph 36).



## SECTION IV.

## FEASTS AND FASTS.

75. *What are the great divisions of the Calendar.*

—Every day is either a feast, a fast, or a feria ; in addition to which the year is divided into certain seasons.

76. *Perhaps it will be simpler if you describe the seasons first.*

—There are ten seasons : 1. *Advent*, which begins on the Sunday nearest the feast of St. Andrew (Nov. 30), and extends to Christmas Eve. 2. *Christmas*, which carries the year on to the Vigil of the Epiphany. 3. *Epiphany*, extending from January 6 to Septuagesima. 4. *Septuagesima*, from the Sunday of that name to Ash Wednesday. 5. *Lent*, extending to Easter Eve, and including 6, *Passion-tide*, the fortnight before Easter. 7. *Easter-tide*, from Easter day to Whitsun Eve, in which is in-

cluded 8, *Ascension-tide*, from the 5th Thursday after Easter to the Saturday week following. 9. *Whitsuntide*, being Whitsunday and the six following days. 10. *The Trinity Season*, extending from Trinity Sunday to Advent.

77. *What do these seasons represent?*

—*Advent* commemorates the first and anticipates the second coming of our Lord ; *Christmas* His Birth ; *Epiphany*, His manifestation to the Gentiles ; *Septuagesima*, His labours and sorrows ; *Lent*, His Fasting ; *Passiontide*, His Suffering and Death ; *Easter*, His Resurrection ; *Ascension-tide*, His going up into Heaven ; *Whitsuntide*, the coming of the Holy Ghost ; and *Trinity*, the final glory of the Elect in the fruition of the Beatific Vision.

78. *What is the respective length of these seasons?*

—*Advent* includes four Sundays ; *Christmas* extends twelve days ; the Sundays called “ after Epiphany ” vary from one to six, according as Easter falls early or late ; *Septuagesima* includes the two next Sundays ; *Lent* comprises six whole weeks from the Sunday after Ash-Wednesday ; *Easter* fifty days, ten of which however

are counted in Ascension-tide ; Whitsuntide seven days ; the Sundays “ after Trinity ” vary from twenty-two to twenty-seven, from the same causes as those after Epiphany.

79. *Are there no other seasons ?*

—The Ember days are called “ the four Seasons ; ” or more properly “ the fasts of the four Seasons,” as occurring in the Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter quarters respectively. They are the Wednesday, Friday, and Saturday after the first Sunday in Lent, Whitsunday, the 14th of September, and the 13th of December.

80. *What are these fasts ?*

—Solemn seasons of prayer for those who are about to receive Holy Orders ; the bishops holding ordinations on the Sundays following these days.

81. *What other days are fasts ?*

—The forty days of Lent, the Rogation days, and the Vigils (or Eves) of Christmas, Easter, Ascension-day, Whitsunday, the Purification and Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary, SS. Matthias, John Baptist, Peter, James,

Bartholomew, Matthew, Simon and Jude, Andrew, Thomas, and All Saints. The Wednesdays and Fridays in Advent are generally observed as fasts, though there is no longer any *rule* on the subject.

82. *What are the Rogation days?*

—The Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday before Ascension-day.

83. *Why are they so called?*

—From the Latin word *rogare*, “to ask,” because Litanies are then sung, *asking* for divers blessings.

84. *Why are the vigils of feasts observed as fasts?*

—To prepare us for their proper observance in a spirit of sober joy; and as teaching us that we must *suffer* here in order to *rejoice* hereafter. They are symbolical of the sorrows of Our Lord’s earthly life, and of the probation which the saints underwent before they were fitted to reign with Christ.

85. *Why then are the eves of certain feasts, as the Circumcision, the Epiphany, the Conversion of St. Paul, St. Mark, SS. Philip and*

*James, St. Barnabas, St. Michael, St. Luke, St. Stephen, St. John, the Holy Innocents, not observed as fasts?*

—All except St. Michael and St. Luke occur either in the Christmas or Easter seasons, when the Church is unwilling to multiply fasts. St. Michael's day is without a vigil, because the angels who are then commemorated did not undergo a state of probation on earth; while it has been held that the feast of St. Etheldréda has superseded the vigil of St. Luke.

86. *I see in the Prayer Book a "table of vigils, fasts, and days of abstinence." What is the distinction between these last?*

—Abstinence is a less strict observance than fasting. Fasting is the *total* abstinence from food up to a certain hour of the day (generally noon), and a diminution of *quantity* as well as *quality* in food. Abstinence is the mere refraining from animal food. Eggs, cheese, and butter are allowed in abstinence, but are forbidden in fasting.

87. *Are these days then to be observed as fasts or abstinence-days indiscriminately?*

—Strictly speaking all the days set down in the

table are *fasts* except the ordinary Fridays out of Lent, which are *days of abstinence*. But those who cannot fast should at least abstain on these days. Persons under age and in laborious work are not obliged to fast. Hence the distinction is not marked out with clearness.

88. *Why is Friday set apart as a day of abstinence?*

—As a weekly memorial of Our Lord's Passion ; as Sunday is set apart as a weekly memorial of His Resurrection.

89. *What are Feasts?*

—Days set apart as solemn commemorations of Our Lord, of the Blessed Virgin, of the Apostles ; or of Martyrs, Virgins, Confessors and other Saints.

90. *What are the Feasts that relate to Our Lord?*

—Christmas, the Circumcision, Epiphany, Easter, and Ascension day ; together with the Transfiguration (August 6), and The Name of Jesus (August 7). To these may be added, Whitsunday, the Feast of the Holy Trinity, and the Invention and Exaltation of the Cross.

91. *What feasts relate to the Blessed Virgin?*  
—Those of her Purification (Feb. 2); Annunciation (March 25); Visitation (July 2); Nativity (Sept. 8); and Conception (Dec. 8).

92. *Which are the Feasts of Apostles?*  
—SS. Andrew; Thomas; John; Conversion of S. Paul; Matthias; Mark; Philip and James; John *ante port. Lat.* (May 6); Barnabas; Peter; James; Bartholomew; Matthew; Luke; Simon and Jude.

93. The other feasts are marked in the Calendar as those of "Martyrs," "Virgins," "Confessors," &c.

94. *Are all these feasts observed with equal importance?*

—No; they are divided into several "classes."

95. *Why is this?*

—So that if a moveable feast clashes with a fixed one, or with an ordinary Sunday, the feast of lesser dignity may give place.

96. *Some feasts are called "double," others "simple." Why?*

—Because formerly the Anthem which was sung at the *Magnificat* and *Benedictus*, was "doubled," that is, sung throughout before as

well as after the Canticle on some festivals, and not on others.

97. *Is the division of any importance now?*

—Yes : since “double” feasts have two evensongs, “simples” only one.

98. *What do you mean by a feast having two evensongs?*

—I mean that its observance begins with the evensong of the evening before. This is called its “first Vespers.” The evening service of the day itself is the “second Vespers.”

99. *Why is this observed?*

—The Jews were wont to begin and end their Sabbaths and other feasts at sunset, in which custom the Christians followed them, but keeping them up till the midnight of the day itself, as a sign of the eternal rest (represented by the evening), in which they hoped to celebrate the true Sabbath that has no ending.

100. Mystically, the solemn commencement of a feast before the vigil fast had expired, or before the actual day of its observance had come, was held to represent the Divine Consolations with which the Saints were visited here in their state of probation ; as an earnest that penitence is not without joy ; and to remind us of



the promises that "in due season we shall reap if we faint not;" "at eventide there shall be light."

101. *Is there not an intermediate class of festivals?*

—Yes: ordinary Sundays and certain other feasts when the Choir has rulers. These are not "double feasts," for the Anthem was not doubled. Yet they have two evensongs like a double feast.<sup>1</sup>

102. *How are the intermediates distinguished from the doubles?*

—They have only two rulers of the Choir.

103. *How do feasts clash?*

—In two ways: by "occurrence" and by "concurrence."

104. *When do feasts "occur"?*

—When two or more fall on the same day.

105. *When do they "concur"?*

—When they fall on two consecutive days, so that the second evensong of the one is also the first evensong of the other.

---

<sup>1</sup> These are styled "semidouble" in the Roman Office, "simples with rulers of choir" in the Sarum rite.

106. *What is done on such occasions?*

—The greater feast is observed, sometimes with a commemoration of the lesser.

107. *How is the lesser commemorated?*

—Its collect is said after that of the greater.

108. *You have spoken of three kinds of feasts—"doubles," "intermediate," and "simples." But what happens if two "double" feasts occur?*

—Double festivals are divided into several classes, which I have not time here to explain at greater length: so that the lesser festival still gives place to the higher.

109. *Are all Sundays of equal rank?*

—Easter, Whitsun and Trinity Sundays are "double" feasts; of the rest, Advent Sunday, the 1st and 5th in Lent, Palm Sunday, and Low Sunday are called "Sundays of the first class;" the remaining Sundays in Advent and Lent, together with Septuagesima and the two following Sundays, are "Sundays of the second class."

110. *What is the rule when Sundays and festivals clash?*

—Sundays of the first class take precedence of

*all* feasts ; Sundays of the second class of all but the highest. Ordinary Sundays yield to "double" feasts of all classes, but take precedence of intermediate and simple feasts.

111. *What are octaves?*

—Certain feasts are kept up for eight days ; the eighth day is the octave-day, the intermediate day the days within the octave.

112. Octaves are observed to add greater dignity to the festivals. Thus Easter has been observed with an octave from the earliest times. Also (as Durandus says), as significant of the future glory of the Saint whose day is being observed, the day itself commemorating the event (as Christmas, our Lord's Birth), the octave day its future consummation, when we shall reap the full fruition. Sometimes the octave commemorates a distinct event, as the Octave of Christmas is observed as the feast of Our Lord's Circumcision, wherein He *completed* His humiliation by taking upon Him the yoke of the Law ;—the Octave of Whitsunday as Trinity Sunday, because the *end* of the Holy Spirit's outpouring on the Church is to lead us to the Beatific Vision of the Eternal Three in One.<sup>1</sup> Sometimes a feast has an octave, not

---

<sup>1</sup> The long and varying weeks "after Trinity" would thus express the *eternity* of the Beatific Vision ; but this beautiful symbolism is peculiar to the Old English Rites and their modern representatives. Elsewhere in the West, Whitsunday is not held to have an octave, but the Sundays thence to Advent are called "after Pentecost," the Feast of the Holy Trinity *happening*, as it were, to coincide with the

only because of its dignity, but because of the many mysteries celebrated thereon. Thus, Epiphany commemorates not only Our Lord's Manifestation, but also His Baptism, and His first miracle at the Marriage of Cana.

113. *What rank have octave days, and days within the octave?*

—The octave day is a “double” of the lowest rank; the days within the octave are intermediate.

114. *What is a feria?*

—A day which is neither a feast nor a fast.

115. *How are ferias distinguished?*

—As ordinary and greater ferias.

116. *What are the greater ferias?*

—The ferial days in Advent and Lent.

117. *What is there to notice about them?*

—They take precedence of intermediate and simple feasts, which are only commemorated at these times.<sup>1</sup>

---

first Sunday after Pentecost. In this rite, the long season “after Pentecost,” is explained as representing the continual outpouring of the Holy Spirit upon the Church till the end of time.

<sup>1</sup> Ash Wednesday, which is a greater feria, takes precedence of all but the *highest* feasts.

118. *What rank do vigils occupy?*

—They take precedence of simple feasts, but not of “intermediates” or “doubles.”

119. *What are the feasts of the Patron (or title) and of the Dedication of the Church?*

—The feast of the saint (or mystery) in whose honour the Church was erected, and the anniversary of its consecration.

120. *How are these days observed?*

—As double feasts of the first class (with an octave, except in Lent); and take precedence of all other feasts except Sundays of the first class, and the greater feasts of Our Lord, the Vigils of Christmas and Pentecost, the Circumcision, Octave of the Epiphany, Ash-Wednesday, Holy Week, Easter and Whitsun weeks, Ascension-day, and All Saints' day.

## SECTION V.

### MATINS AND EVENSONG.

121. *Why is the morning service of the Church called Matins?*

—From the Latin *matutina*, which means “appertaining to the morning.” From a similar cause the evening service is styled “Evensong.”

122. *What is the object of these services?*

—The constant singing of God’s praises by means of the psalter, which is sung through in regular course once a month; in subordination to which are offered acts of prayer for the needs of the worshippers, and of intercession for others.

123. *Why are these services directed to be sung “daily?”*

—Because they represent the worship of the heavenly courts, which is continual.

124. *Why is the priest directed to say them “either privately or openly?”*

—Because as a priest he is specially bound to praise God continually, a duty which he must not omit because the people neglect to join him in it; and because he is bound to offer the Church's intercession for all his flock, whether they themselves unite with him in bodily presence or not.

125. *What service of the Jewish Church do these offices represent?*

—The "Service of Song" (1 Chron. vi. 81).

126. *Ought they then to be sung?*

—Yes, wherever possible. Music is the fitting adjunct to the praises of God.

127. *I observe that the choir are ranged laterally in the chancel; and that they sing from side to side. Why is this?*

—This mode of singing, which is called the "antiphonal," is of the greatest antiquity; so much so that it is said to have been instituted by St. Polycarp, the disciple of St. John, who saw in a vision the choirs of heaven chanting the praises of God in this manner.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Socrates, Eccl. Hist. The "Myrrour of Our Lady" gives a further reason: "The Psalms are sung sometimes on the

128. *I believe you call these two sides "Decani" and "Cantoris." For what reason?*

—In cathedral churches the stall of the Dean (*Decani*) was to the right on entering the choir; hence the south or Epistle side was called the side of the Dean ("Decani"). Opposite to him was the stall of the Precentor (*Cantoris*); and the North or Gospel side was called of the Precentor ("Cantoris").

129. *Why does the Priest begin the more direct<sup>1</sup> portion of the service by the verse: "O Lord, open thou our lips"?*

---

one side and sometimes on the other, in token that the gifts of the Holy Ghost, whereby men do good deeds, are given some to one, some to another. But in singing of Psalms the choir standeth turned toward each other, and singeth face to face, in token that the gifts of God which each one hath received, ought to be used to the helping each of other."

<sup>1</sup> In the first Prayer Book of Edward VI. the Choir service began with the Lord's Prayer; and Bishop Cosin, who was principally concerned in the last revision, wished to make a marked separation between the respective portions of the service that preceded and followed the Lord's Prayer. In some MS. "directions to the printer" in his handwriting, he inserted after the Absolution: "Here set a fleuron," and on the next page before the Lord's Prayer: "Here set a fair compartment." In the first series of his notes on the Prayer Book (Works, v. 47) he wrote: "Here begins the Service; for that which goes before is but a pre-



—Because we cannot sing the praises of God without His assistance. For which cause it is a pious custom at this place to sign the lips with the sign of the Cross, as the forehead and breast are signed at the next verse : “ O God, make speed,” &c.<sup>1</sup>

130. *Why does Gloria Patri follow here?*

—In token of our faith that God has heard us, and has opened our lips to sing His praise.

131. *I observe that here and elsewhere, when this verse is sung, all in choir turn towards the East, and incline the head. Explain this.*

—It is a solemn act of adoration to the Holy Trinity, whose praises are especially set forth in this doxology. For the same reason the people incline their heads at the first clause.

132. It is customary to *bow the head* at the Name of Jesus *whenever* it occurs in Divine service, and at any inscription of holiness to the Name of the Lord (as in the

---

paration to it: and is newly added in K. Edward VI.'s second book in imitation of the Liturgy and Mass of the Church of Rome. But as their Hours began with the Lord's Prayer, so begins our Matins, and the high service of the Altar.”

<sup>1</sup> On the sign of the Cross, see paragraphs 178, 179, and the note subjoined.

fourth verse of the Magnificat, Psalm cxi. 9, &c.), in veneration of that Name which "is as ointment poured forth," and in accordance with the express testimony of St. Paul (Phil. ii. 10), that "at the Name of Jesus every knee should bow."

133. On similar grounds the custom obtains of *bowing towards the Altar* on entering and leaving Church, and whenever at other times passing in front of it. "Ye shall reverence My sanctuary," was God's command to the Jews, and the Christian sanctuary is holier than was the Jewish. It is moreover the expression by outward gesture of that exhortation of the Psalmist, "Fall down before *His footstool*, for He is holy." When the Blessed Sacrament is on the Altar, the custom is to *genuflect*, or *bow the knee*; and to this St. Augustine beautifully refers this very passage of the Psalmist (Comment. on Ps. xcix.) : "'Fall down before His footstool, for He is holy.' The Scripture says : 'The Earth is the footstool of My Feet.' I turn me to Christ, and I find Him here" (*i.e.*, under the sacramental veils). "He took Earth of Earth : for flesh is of earth, and of Mary He took Flesh. And since He walked here in this very Flesh, He hath given us this very Flesh to eat for our salvation" (*i.e.*, in the Sacrament). "No one eats that Flesh except he first adore. We find therefore how we may adore the footstool of the Lord, and not only do we not sin in worshipping, *but we sin if we worship not.*" So our own Bishop Forbes says : "Christ in the Eucharist is to be adored with Divine worship, inasmuch as His living and glorified Body is present therein." Perfectly analogous, though of course infinitely lower in degree, is the ritual that obtains in civil life. Reverence is made before the throne of the sovereign, though he be

not there ; when he is there, men kneel, and kiss his extended hand.

134. *What is the " Venite " ?*

—It is an introduction to the psalmody which now commences ; for which reason it is called " the Invitatory Psalm."

135. *In singing the Psalms and canticles, why does the cantoris side of the choir lead ?*

—Because that is the side of the precentor, whose office it is to lead the singing ; and out of reverence to the Holy Gospel, which is read from this side of the Altar.

136. *Why are the Glorias sung " full," i.e. by both sides of the choir ?*

—Because the praises of the Blessed Trinity should be celebrated by every creature. Besides which, while the Psalms being composed of prayer and confessions of sin, as well as of praise, are fitly sung by the Church militant, the ascription of blessing and glory to the Holy Trinity is sung alike by the Church Militant, and the Church Triumphant.

137. *Why has the Choir rulers ?*

—To preside over the singing of the Psalms, that all may be done reverently and in order.

138. *Are there always rulers of the Choir?*

—No; only on double and intermediate feasts. At other times, the Choir is presided over by the precentor.

139. *Why do the rulers vary in number?*

—To mark the dignity of the feast. There are four on double feasts, two on intermediate ones.

140. *Why do the rulers wear copes, and why do they sit during the Psalms, while the rest of the choir is standing?*

—They wear copes in honour of the “work of God,” which is then being carried on; and as symbolical of the rule they possess over the Choir; for which reason they sit, as also to be more at leisure to superintend the ritual of the Psalmody.

141. *Why do they go to the lectern in turns before each Psalm?*

—To give out the “intonation,” that is the commencement of the Psalm, which the Choir then take up. This is done alternately on the same principle as that on which the Psalms are sung from side to side.

142. *Did the Church always surround the Psalms with ceremonial observances?*

—Yes; it was the custom in very early times to light lamps at the singing of the Psalms, as a sign of the joy and fervour with which we should celebrate the praises of God.

143. Formerly (and still in Religious Houses) the Psalter was arranged so as to be sung through *every week*, by means of seven daily services, called the "Hours," in accordance with the words of the Psalmist, "Seven times a day do I praise Thee, because of Thy righteous judgments" (Ps. cxix. 164), and of the Night Office, or *Nocturns*, according to the saying of the same Psalmist, "At midnight I will rise to give thanks unto Thee" (v. 62). "I have thought upon Thy name, O Lord, in the night season" (v. 55). Of these hours *Matins*, which consisted of the Night Office, and *Lauds*, and *Evensong* (to which *Compline* was frequently added), were the greater, the rest the lesser hours. Strictly speaking, they were sung as follows: *Matins*, between midnight and daybreak; *Prime*, at 6 A.M., at which hour our Lord was led before Pilate, and accused; *Terce*, at 9 A.M., the hour when the Holy Ghost is believed to have fallen upon the Apostles, and also when Our Lord was scourged and crowned with thorns; *Sext*, at midday, the hour in which Our Lord was nailed to the Cross; *Nones*, at 3 P.M., when Our Lord gave up the ghost; *Evensong*, at 6 P.M., when He was taken down from the Cross, and when also on Maundy Thursday He celebrated the Last Supper, and instituted the Holy Eucharist; *Compline*, at 9 P.M., the hour in which He was buried, and in which He suffered His agony in the garden. But in secular use the lesser hours came to be either altogether neglected or to be said by "accumulation," that is, three or four services said continuously, and therefore

when the Church arranged a vernacular Service-book, two daily choir-services were alone appointed, Matins, composed out of Matins, Lauds, and Prime; and Evensong, arranged from Evensong and Compline. The alteration necessarily involved a less frequent repetition of the Psalter. At the same time the old canonical hours of prayer were recognised and provided for in private recitation in the various editions of the "Primer."<sup>1</sup>

144. There were several forms of the Hour services. The most celebrated is the Monastic arrangement, instituted by St. Benedict in the sixth century, but derived by him from the Egyptian hermits. That best known and most widely used in England, however, was the use or arrangement called "of Salisbury," because it was made (or rather consolidated) by St. Osmund, bishop of that city. In their main features the various Western uses agree;—in the general form of the services, in the greater dignity of Lauds and Vespers, and in the frequent use of the 119th Psalm, which formed the staple of the lesser hours. The chief peculiarity of the monastic use (which is probably the *oldest* arrangement of the Psalter) consisted in the greater number of psalms assigned to Nocturns, in the singing of the third psalm at the beginning of the night-office before the Venite, and in the assignment of four *psalms* only to Vespers

---

<sup>1</sup> "We read that Sayntes both in the Old Law and in the New, prayesd God in these hours. Daniel the prophet worshipped God thrice in the day kneeling: that was, after the exposition of St. Jerome, at Terce, at Sext, and at None. Also Peter and John went up to the temple to pray at the hour of None, as it is written in the Acts of the Apostles. And St. Paul and Silas being in prison, prayed to God at midnight . . ."—*Myrroure*.

instead of *five* as elsewhere ; a trace of which remains in our present use of the 119th Psalm.<sup>1</sup>

145. *What are the " tones " employed in the Psalter ?*

—They are the Gregorian scales modified into a melody characterised by a *final* or tonic, and a *dominant*, or reciting-note. Fourteen such

---

<sup>1</sup> The reason for this division would appear to be as follows:—Matins, being sung in the daytime, represents our life of probation here, during which we brace ourselves up to our labour by contemplating the Passion of Our Lord, in which He received His *five* wounds. But Evensong, which is sung at nightfall, represents the "rest that remaineth for the people of God," when we shall join in that perpetual "service of song" before the throne of God in the New Jerusalem, the city "that lieth four-square" (Rev. xxi. 16); so too, in our active life here on earth, we attain to holiness by watching over and consecrating our *five* senses: while in our life of contemplation in glory we shall rejoice before God in the *four* transcendent attributes of the resurrection body,—charity, agility, impassibility, and subtlety. The curious reader will remember that between the tabernacle and the court were *five* pillars of shittim wood overlaid with gold (Exod. xxvi. 37), but between the Holy and the Most Holy Place *four* (Ibid. v. 32). Five psalms would appear to have been later assigned to Vespers to make it correspond more exactly with Lauds, of which it is the counterpart, as Compline is of Prime. Mystical writers have treated of the different weekly arrangements of the Psalter at great length; but their remarks, however full of beauty, would not interest the general reader, belonging as they do rather to the "Ritual Reason Why" of the Psalter, as used in religious communities.

“Modes” are employed in the hymns and anthems of the Church, each of the seven scales admitting of two modes, having the same *final*, but a different *dominant*.<sup>1</sup> Of these “modes” the first eight only were employed in the Psalms and Canticles, each mode having its fixed melody. These melodies form the eight Gregorian “tones.” A ninth called the “Eighth Irregular” or *tonus peregrinus*—the “foreign tone”—is added; its irregularity consisting in the two halves of the tone having a different dominant.

146. *Are these Tones employed in any recognised order?*

—The first tone is styled, “grave”; the second, “mournful;” the third, “exultant;” the fourth, “harmonious;” the fifth, “gladsome;” the sixth, “devout;” the seventh, “angelical;” and the eighth, “sweet.” They are generally distributed according to the character of the Psalms to which they are sung, or to the season.

147. *I see that the Psalter is “pointed” for singing. In what does this “pointing” consist?*

---

<sup>1</sup> The Gregorian dominant differs from the modern, which is invariably the fifth above the key-note.



—Each verse is marked off into two clauses by the colon (:), which corresponds to a similar division in the tones.

148. *Have not the tones more than two divisions?*

—Ordinarily not. There are two changes from the dominant, one in the middle, called the *mediation*, and one at the end, called the *cadence* or *ending*, each consisting of from one to five syllables. But on certain occasions a third division, called the *intonation*, appears.

149. *In what does the “intonation” consist?*

—In the prefixing of two or more notes to the dominant of the first clause.

150. *When is it used?*

—In the first verse of each psalm, and of each verse of the *Gloria Patri* on festivals; in the ferial service at the beginning of the first psalm only; and in penitential seasons not at all in the Psalter. In the Canticles *Benedictus* and *Magnificat*, it is used rather more frequently: always at the initial verse; and in the ferial service (not penitential) at both verses of the

*Gloria Patri*; on festivals it is prefixed to every verse of these canticles.<sup>1</sup>

151. *Why is the intonation thus employed?*

—It is a festal feature in the “ tones,” and is therefore more or less frequently used according to the solemnity of the occasion. It is sung at the *Gloria* because of the festal character of this Doxology, and to add solemnity to the praise of the Holy Trinity which is therein celebrated.

152. *What is the “ pneuma ” or slur?*

—It consists of a few notes, either sung to the concluding syllable of the psalms, or played on the organ.

153. *When is it used?*

—At the end of the Psalms for the day, and at

<sup>1</sup> The best authorities, however, say that the Evangelical Canticles should *always* be sung *festally*, *i.e.* with the intonation to every verse. And this would seem to have been the custom in the mediæval Church of England. For in a MS. Breviary of Sarum use with the musical notation, preserved in the British Museum (Arundel MSS. 130), dated 1445, the eight tones for the *Benedictus* are thus prefaced, “ *Benedictus* ” (and of course equally *Magnificat*) “ on account of its Evangelical authority, has this more beautiful mode in the intonation of psalmody and in jubilation.” Chambers’ Sar. Psal. p. 71. The Tones follow in *festal* form.

the end of the Canticles *Benedictus* and *Magnificat* in the choir service, and of the *Te Deum* on festivals; and at the end of the sequence in the Holy Eucharist.

154. *Why are the Psalms finished with a pneuma?*

—As a sign of our reluctance to quit the praises of God even for instruction and prayer.

155. *Is this custom old?*

—The addition of a cadence to the “Alleluia” in the Eucharist, and to certain hymns when sung as sequences, is of some antiquity. Its use in this particular place is prescribed in the Old English Service books, and was probably observed here from the time of St. Augustine.

156. *Was the pneuma invariably used?*

—No; it was omitted in Passiontide, when all marks of rejoicing are suppressed; in Easter-week, when the whole office was regarded as one continued act of praise; and in the Service for the Dead, in which the character of the psalmody was rather that of supplication than of praise.

157. A trace of the *pneuma* after the Psalms may be found in the “Voluntary,” which in some Churches is

here introduced ; only the *pneuma*, which, in accordance with the severe and chaste character of plain song, consisted of a few notes, winding out of the *Amen* as it were, and ending on the final of the mode in which the Psalms had been chanted, was replaced by a longer and more florid "performance," in which, as is generally the case in "Anglican" or Cathedral music, the symbolical meaning was sacrificed in order to give room to the *display* of the organist.

158. *Why are the Lessons read from a lectern ?*

—It is fitting that each ministration should have its proper place and appropriate furniture, that all things may be done decently and in order, and to the edifying of the flock. The lectern is therefore placed where the reader may be seen and heard of the people, in whose ears he is delivering the message of God, whether in the midst of the choir, or outside the screen.

159. In some cases the first lesson is read facing south, the second facing north ; for the same reason for which the Epistle and Gospel are recited respectively at the south and north corners of the altar, to signify the change from the Law of Moses to the Gospel of Christ. In reading the Old Testament, he slightly turns towards the altar, to signify that the prophecies were but indistinctly understood before the advent of Christ. 'The people heard the voice, as on Mount Sinai, but did not see the face of him that spake. In reading the New Testament, he slightly turns towards the

people, to show that the Gospel of Christ and the Apostolic doctrine is not hid, but is preached everywhere.<sup>1</sup>

160. Another old custom is for the Reader to beg the officiant's benediction before executing his ministry, which the latter bestows sitting. Bona, in speaking of a similar act of the Deacon before reading the Gospel, thus explains the observance: "Before reading, he seeks from the celebrant a benediction, that is to say, license to read; for as says Rupertus Abbas (lib. i. c. 12): 'None without mission or permission may assume the office of preaching; for how shall they preach except they be sent?'" The reader, therefore, like the seventy, goes forth to the people in the name and with the authority of the Priest, as well as with his blessing for the due and reverent performance of his work.

161. *Why do the congregation sit during the Lessons?*

—Because it is the general attitude of those who are being instructed. Also to avoid weariness, and in order to gather the mind, restfully to contemplate the mysteries revealed to us in Holy Scripture.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mystical writers explain the reading of the Gospel (and similarly of our second lesson) toward the *North*, as representing the putting to flight of Satan by the "glad tidings of salvation,"—that Satan who said, "I will sit upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the North." (Isa. xiv. 13.)

162. "The changing that is in God's service, from one thing to another," says the *Myrroure*, "is ordained to drive away your dulness, that ye should not wax tedious and weary, but gladly and joyfully—not in vain joy, but in joy of spiritual devotion—continue in God's service. Therefore sometime ye sing, sometime ye read, sometime ye hear; sometime ye sit, sometime ye stand, sometime ye incline, sometime ye kneel." "The Lessons are heard sitting, for knowledge of truth and right ruling of the will may not be but in a restful soul."

163. We *stand* at the Gospel in the Holy Eucharist, because it is there used liturgically, for which reason it can only be read in that place by one at the least in Deacon's orders. Laymen may read the Lessons in the Choir service.<sup>1</sup>

164. *Why is the Te Deum sometimes omitted?*  
—It is considered a joyful and triumphant hymn, and is not, therefore, used in penitential seasons.

165. *Which are these seasons?*  
—Advent, and the season between Septuagesima and Easter, vigils, and three out of the four ember weeks.

---

<sup>1</sup> "After the commencement of the third antiphon let one of the boys in the dress of a reader bring the book of lessons to the proper place, who himself may read the lesson." *Consuet. Sarum*.

166. *Why not all the ember-weeks ?*

—Because one occurs in the octave of Pentecost, during which solemnity it is not fitting that the *Te Deum* should be disused.

167. *Why is Gloria Patri not said at the end of the Te Deum ?*

—Because the whole hymn is a song of praise to the Holy Trinity. The Doxology would therefore be superfluous.

168. *I notice that the choir incline towards the Altar at certain verses of this hymn. Why is this ?*

—At the verse, “Holy, Holy, Holy,” &c., for the same reason as at the *Gloria* ; at the verse, “When thou tookest upon Thee to deliver man,” in reverence to our Lord’s Incarnation ; at the verse, “We therefore pray Thee,” both because praise at this verse is exchanged for prayer, and in veneration of our Lord’s Passion, which is spoken of at the end of the verse;<sup>1</sup> and at the verse, “O Lord, in Thee have I trusted,”<sup>2</sup> as expressing our trust in God, whose throne is represented by the Altar,

---

<sup>1</sup> Myrroure lxiv. lxx.

<sup>2</sup> Consuet. Sarum. 7.

according to the words of the Psalmist, " I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills : from whence cometh my help." (Psalm cxxi. 1.)

169. *Why is incense used at the Benedictus and Magnificat when the service is solemnly performed ?*

—In honour of the Incarnation, which is especially celebrated in these, the " Evangelical " Canticles.

170. It was doubtless the ancient custom to offer incense *daily*, at least where sufficient was offered among the oblations of the people. The twofold offering of incense morning and evening thus answered to the " perpetual incense " of the Tabernacle (Exod. xxx. 7. 8), whilst its use in connection with the Holy Eucharist was a fulfilment of the prophecy, that " in every place incense " should be " offered to the Name of the Lord, and a pure offering," or sacrifice (Mal. i. 11). In process of time, the services came to be performed with less ceremonial on ferial, than on Sundays and festal days, and so the offering of incense to be confined to the latter.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The position which Matins has come to hold with us as a preparation merely for the High Celebration on Sundays and Festivals, has led to its being seldom " solemnly " performed. Hence the use of incense at the *Benedictus* is comparatively rare. Indeed it is obviously unwise to employ ritual to exalt the former, while so many of the non-communicants make assistance at the choir-service their whole Sunday worship.



171. *What are the ceremonies connected with it ?*

—The taperbearers and thurifer, towards the close of the lesson, retire into the vestry, the former to light their tapers, the latter to prepare the incense. At its conclusion they return, and accompany the Priest to the Altar. He then puts incense into the censer, and with it censes the Altar, first on the middle, then on the right side, then on the left, and again from left to right, where he gives the censer to the thurifer, who, with the taper-bearers, precedes him to his stall, where he censes him with three motions of the censer ; next he censes the clergy in order, first those on the decani side, then those on the cantoris, using two motions of the censer ; next the choir on either side in like manner ; and, lastly, the congregation. Then, preceded by the taper-bearer, he carries the thurible back to the vestry.

172. *Will you explain these incensations of the Altar and choir ?*

—The Altar represents Christ, and by the incense with which the Priest surrounds it, he signifies the truth of Christ's divinity, the solemn

oblation of incense being an act of worship due to God alone (Exod. xxx. 37). It is also typical of the mercy-seat, and the cloud of incense which surrounds it symbolises the intercessions which, in union with that of our Great High Priest, surround the throne of God on every side. The Altar is censured in the midst first because that is the place of honour, being the spot where the Blessed Sacrament is consecrated;<sup>1</sup> afterwards on the Epistle side first, because to the Jewish Church first the ministry of intercession was committed; then the Gospel side, because it is now committed to the Christian Church; then again from the Gospel to the Epistle side, in token that Jew and Gentile are all one in Christ. The congregation are censured in acknowledgment that through the Incarnation all are partakers of the Divine Nature: and in order, first the clergy, next the choir, lastly the laity, to show that,

---

<sup>1</sup> After the Priest has censured the Cross with three motions of the censer, he censures the upper part or retable first twice toward the Gospel side; then twice toward the Epistle side; then he censures the Altar itself first on the Epistle side, as described above. This signifies that the Gospel existed in the purpose of God before all time, and was therefore really anterior to the Law.

though all one in Christ, all members have not the like honour. But whereas men are only in a certain sense partakers of the Divine Nature, which is directly allied to the human alone in Christ; therefore, the Priest alone censures the Altar, while the choir and people are censured by an inferior minister.<sup>1</sup>

173. *What should be our thoughts at the offering of the incense?*

—We should earnestly desire that our prayers might ascend as the incense in God's sight, and that by our holiness of life we may offer ourselves to Him in the odour of sweetness. We may offer Him the precious merits of Christ's Life and Passion—which is, indeed, a sacrifice of a sweet-smelling savour in His sight, and which is being specially pleaded at the time of incense, whether at the Evangelical Canticles, or in the Eucharistic sacrifice. And when the minister brings the censer towards us we should

---

<sup>1</sup> Cardinal Bona gives as the symbolic teaching of the censuring of the people the spirit of prayer, and the grace of God that is shed abroad in our hearts. "The incensing of the ministers and of the laity around is performed as pertaining to religion; namely with the intent to stir up to prayer and to represent the effect of Divine grace."

pray that, by the grace of God shed abroad in our hearts, those merits may be communicated to us individually, and to those for whom we are more especially bound to pray.

174. The Canticles *Benedictus* and *Magnificat* have ever been regarded as invariable *Gospels*, sung Psalm-fashion. Thus the 'Myrroure'—"Ye have in your service three Gospels, that is *Benedictus* and *Magnificat* and *Nunc Dimittis*:<sup>1</sup> and all three are sung standing for reverence of the Gospel." (*Myr.* lxx.) Hence lights and incense were used here as in the Gospel. With regard to the use of lights in connection with the Gospel, we have the express testimony of St. Jerome to its antiquity. "Throughout all the Churches of the East," he says, "when the Gospel is about to be read, tapers are lighted, though it be broad daylight, not to scatter the darkness, but as a sign of joy, . . . that under the symbol of bodily light, that light may be shadowed forth of which we read in the Psalter, 'Thy word, O Lord, is a lantern unto my feet, and a light unto my paths.'" *Epist. adv. Vigilant.* The Jews have a similar observance in their synagogues at the reading of the Law, and probably for similar reasons.

#### 175. *Why do we stand at the Creed?*

—To show that faith without works is dead; that what we believe in our heart we must not only declare with our lips, but show forth in our

---

<sup>1</sup> Incense, however, was not burned at *Nunc Dimittis*, because it belonged to compline, which as one of the lesser hours was never sung "solemnly."

lives. It is sung towards the East, because such was the attitude used in all the more solemn parts of the service, and as signifying that a right faith, like every other good and perfect gift, cometh down from the Father of lights, and must be sought from Him by diligent prayer.

176. *Why are the two last clauses of the Creed and of the Lord's Prayer sung with inflexions like the versicles?*

—Anciently, when the “discipline of the secret” prevailed, the catechumens were not taught the Creed and the Lord's Prayer till just before Baptism. Hence these were never said aloud except in the Mass, when no unbaptized persons were supposed to be present. This custom was retained after its cause had ceased, and the Priest and choir chanted the last two clauses as a signal that the Creed or Lord's Prayer was finished.

177. St. Benedict first introduced the custom of saying the Lord's Prayer *aloud* at Lauds and Vespers; and from him the usage became general in the West. At the other hours it is still said secretly.

The “Myrroure” assigns a mystical reason for the usage. According to it the Apostles' Creed was recited privately because it was made before the Gospel was

openly preached, while the Nicene and Athanasian Creeds, which were afterwards written against certain heresies, were said aloud, "to the strength of our faith and confusion of heretics."

178. *I perceive that many persons make the sign of the cross at the end of the Creed and the Lord's Prayer. Will you explain the reason?*

—As to the use of the sign of the Cross in general, I will reply in the words of the 30th canon of 1603. The Bishops are speaking of the sign of the Cross in Baptism; but, as you will see, they bear witness to the antiquity of the custom of using it at other times: "The honour and dignity of the name of the cross begat a reverend estimation even in the Apostles' times (for aught that is known to the contrary) of the sign of the cross, which the Christians shortly after used in all their actions: thereby making an outward show and profession, even to the astonishment of the Jews, that they were not ashamed to acknowledge Him for their Lord and Saviour, who died for them upon the cross." Similarly Bishop Montague: "If it be not superstitious to sign on the forehead, why is it to sign in any other part of the body? Why more out of Baptism than in Baptism? Is one part of the

body more subject to superstition than another? What hindereth it but that I may sign myself with the sign of the cross in any part of my body at any time, at night when I go to bed, in the morning when I rise? The ancient Church so used it out of Baptism, and so may we." Its use *here* appears to have arisen from the custom alluded to above, of beginning and ending (first the *day*—afterwards) any special action with the sign of the cross. Thus the people were wont to sign themselves at the end of the more solemn parts of the service, as the Gospel (and for the same reason the three "Evangelical" Canticles), Creed, Lord's Prayer, Gloria in Excelsis, Sanctus, &c., and when the Priest bestows his benediction.<sup>1</sup>

179. The sign of the Cross is a short creed in action. First, it represents our belief in the Crucified, and our trust in His Passion. Next, it declares our faith in the Holy Trinity, to whom we have access by the Cross of Christ. For first we place our hand to our forehead,

---

<sup>1</sup> At the same time this custom, though ancient, is entirely optional, and is expressly left to each one's devotion. "As touching *crossing*, holding up of hands, knocking upon the breast, and other gestures, they may be used or left, as every man's devotion serveth." *Edw. VI.'s First Prayer Book* ("Certain Notes for the more plain explanation, &c.").

*in the Name of the Father*, who is God over all ; then to the bottom of the breast, *and of the Son*, who humbled Himself even to the death of the Cross ; and, lastly, from the left to the right side, *and of the Holy Ghost*, who proceedeth both from Father and from Son. Or, as the “*Myrroure*” explains it, by the sign of the Cross we express our belief that “our Lord Jesus Christ came down from *the Head*, that is the Father, unto earth by His Holy Incarnation ; and from the earth unto the *left side*, that is Hell, by His bitter Passion ; and from thence to His Father’s *right side* by His glorious Ascension.”

180. *What is the meaning of the verse, “The Lord be with you,” and its response ?*

—It is a very ancient mode of salutation in the Christian Church, having been borrowed apparently from the Jews. (See Ruth ii. 4.) The Priest, being now about to engage in prayer and intercession, turns towards the people, and extending his hands, salutes them as his brethren in Christ, in token that they are partakers with him in the prayers that follow ; and they reply similarly in acknowledgment that, though it belongs to him by virtue of his office to intercede for them, they on their part bear him up by their prayers.

181. *Why does he extend his hands ?*

—As a sign of charity, and in token of his



anxious desire that they may be partakers of the grace for which he is about to pray.

182. *At the words "Let us pray" he joins his hands. Wherefore?*

—To signify that the prayers of Priest and people are, as it were, joined in one; that he is about to pray, not in his own name alone, but in the name of all present, or rather of the whole Church. For the same reason all sing together the *Kyrie eleison*, or "Lord have mercy upon us," and all recite together the Lord's Prayer.

183. *Why does the Priest stand up at the Versicles and Collect?*

—Because he offers these acts of intercession ministerially. For which cause, according to ancient custom, he should descend from his stall and stand in the midst of the choir, facing east, till after the last Collect.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Sarum rubric is: "Let the Priest stand up, and proceed to the step of the choir at Matins and Evensong, and there say these verses." The Collect was universally said standing; and it is difficult to conceive how the contrary custom crept in, as the "*all kneeling*" of our rubric need not refer to the Priest. From the "*Myrroure*" we learn that the Collect was said "turned toward the East."

184. When the service is said by one not in Priest's orders these versicles are said kneeling, because the officiant is not authorised to offer them ministerially.

185. *What is the "Anthem"?*

—Any musical composition, whether metrical or prose, bearing upon the services of the day. The term was formerly applied to certain detached verses (more properly called "Antiphons") appended to the Psalms and Canticles. Anthems, in the Cathedral sense, are of extremely modern date, being introduced in the time of Queen Elizabeth to supply the loss of the Hymns which Archbishop Cranmer wished translated for the reformed services, but could not obtain. As these have since been translated it is usual to sing them here in place of the Anthem.

186. *How are these Hymns arranged?*

—In the ordinary ferial service they commemorate the order of the Creation, except that for Saturday at Evensong, which is a prayer to the Holy Trinity for light. The various

---

(Myr. lxxii.) A boy held the book for the Priest to say the Collects *junctis manibus*, and in the solemn service the taper bearers stood before him facing each other.

seasons have proper hymns commemorating the mystery therein celebrated. Thus, the Advent, Christmas, Epiphany, Ascension, and Whitsun seasons, have each Proper Office Hymns for Morning and Evening. So has Easter-tide, with an additional one for Saturdays at Even-song. There are also Proper Hymns for Trinity Sunday, St. Stephen, Holy Innocents, the Invention and Exaltation of the Cross, St. John Baptist, St. Mary Magdalene, the Transfiguration and Holy Name of Jesus, St. Michael, and All Saints' Day; and for the feasts of Apostles and Evangelists in and out of Easter-tide, of one and of many martyrs, of Confessors, of Virgins, of Holy Women, and of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

187. *How are these Hymns distinguished?*

—The ferial hymns throughout the week in the Epiphany and Trinity seasons are called the “Ordinary of the Season:” those for the other seasons are the “Proper of the Season.” Similarly, the hymns common to all Saints of any class, as Martyrs, Virgins, &c., are the “Common of Saints,” those appointed especially for any saint form the “Proper of Saints.”

188. *How are the Hymns sung?*

—To a proper plain-song melody, written in one of the fourteen Gregorian modes. They are begun by the Precentor, or rulers of the choir, like the psalms, and sung verse by verse on alternate sides, both choirs joining at the Doxology, and facing eastward as at the *Gloria*. The pneuma is not used, unless the hymn be employed as a sequence.

189. *Are not Hymns sung at other times except in place of the Anthem?*

—Yes: at the end of Matins and Evensong, when a “Memorial” has to be made; and if there is no memorial, at the discretion of the clergy; as also before and after the sermon, &c.

190. *What is a “Memorial?”*

—It is the commemoration of a lesser feast which falls on the same day as a greater. The “Office” of the latter is said, and a “Memorial” made of the former. This is done (with us) by the use of its proper hymn at the end of the service.

191. The other hymns being of a less liturgical character, are generally sung with more freedom, to tunes composed in the modern scales, and by both sides of the choir.

## SECTION VI.

### SOLEMN TE DEUM.

192. *Is not the Te Deum sometimes employed as a separate service?*

—Yes: in times of general or particular thanksgiving. It usually, however, follows the Eucharist or Evensong on these occasions.

193. *What are the attendant ceremonies?*

—The Priest is vested in a white cope, that being the vestment appointed for all solemn functions beside the Eucharist, and white being the colour appropriate for rejoicing. He is attended by the taper bearers and thurifer, the latter with smoking censer, though the incense is not “offered”—that is, the Priest does not cense the altar, nor take the censer into his hands.

194. *Why is this?*

—Incense is used here as a sign of rejoicing, but it is not offered, because the Te Deum, as a separate service, is not a liturgical office, apart from which the Priest does not offer incense.

## SECTION VII.

## THE LITANY.

195. *Why is the Litany recited at a desk outside the choir screen?*

—Because it is a penitential service, and for such this is the most fitting place, as appears from that of Joel (ch. ii. 17): “Let the priests, the ministers of the Lord, weep *between the porch and the altar*, and let them say, Spare Thy people, O Lord.” The Priest also descends into the body of the Church to shew that, no less than the people, he has need to deplore his sins.

196. *Is the Litany ever “solemnly” sung?*

—Yes: on the Rogation Days, and on Ash Wednesday. The officiant wears a red cope, and is assisted by the choir. On the former occasion it is sung in procession; but on Ash Wednesday at the usual place.

197. *Why is the Litany sung with greater solemnity at these times?*

—In the former case to implore a blessing on the fruits of the earth; in the latter, as an appropriate introduction to the Lenten fast.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Litany is solemnly sung on the three last days of Holy Week, and on the Vigil of Pentecost for a similar reason as on Ash Wednesday; and on the Feast of St. Mark to implore freedom from pestilence, St. Gregory the Great having put a stop to a plague in Rome by a solemn procession with litanies in 590: similarly in any time of public calamity.

## SECTION VIII.

## PROCESSIONS.

198. *What are Processions?*

—Hymns, Psalms, or Litanies chanted by the clergy and people *marching* in formal order. They are of two kinds, *festival* and *penitential*.

199. *Why are Processions used?*

—*Festival* processions represent the progress of the Church, according to the prophecy of the Psalmist: "They will *go* from strength to strength." In *penitential* processions the idea is different. In these the Church, as it were, "goeth on her way weeping," yet bearing the good seed of supplication and prayer, and looking to come again with joy, bringing her sheaves with her (Ps. cxxvi. 7). In the one, the future *triumph* of the Church is depicted; in the other, her present *pilgrimage* through this vale of misery.

200. *Why are Processions headed by the Cross?*



—As a token that through the Cross alone the Church can attain her triumph, or go safely in this her exile—that the Cross sanctifies alike her joy and her sorrow. The Cross going before serves also to shew that alike in her triumph and in her trial she does but follow the steps of Christ crucified, who in His earthly ministry was like His great Apostle, “in journeyings oft” for the salvation of souls, till at length He “went up” to Jerusalem, and along the “way of sorrows” to the Mount of Calvary; and afterward, having risen glorious from the grave, “went up on high,” and sat down at the Right Hand of God.

201. *Why are banners employed?*

—Partly to kindle the devotion of the people; and partly for mystical reasons. Thus, in *festal* processions, to signify yet more clearly the progress and future triumph of the Church, according to that description of her in the Canticles (ch. vi. 10): “Who is she that looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners?” So in *penitential* processions (though more sparingly), to shew that in her pilgrimage here

she is the Lord's host, drawn up in battle array; or to express her hope of deliverance, according to the words of the Psalmist, when he strove with the King of Zobah (2 Sam. viii. 3): "Thou hast shewed thy people hard things; thou hast made us to drink the wine of astonishment. [Yet] Thou hast given a banner to them that fear thee, that it may be displayed, because of the truth, that thy beloved may be delivered." (Ps. lx. 3-5.)

202. *In Processions the place of honour appears to be at the end, those of lowest rank going first, then those of higher grade in order, till the Bishop or principal dignitary closes the line. Will you explain this?*

—The Church probably adopted the custom from the ceremonial employed in civil life; in which the sovereign was preceded by heralds and other functionaries, the place of honour of course being near the person of the sovereign.

203. It may interest the reader to remind him that the very first service performed in England by St. Augustine and his band of missionaries, was a Litany in Procession. They came, says Bede, "bearing a silver cross for their ensign, and the image of our Lord and

Saviour painted on a board . . . . and as they drew near to the city with the holy cross and the banner of our sovereign Lord and King Jesus Christ, they sang with one accord this Litany : ' Lord, we pray Thee of Thy mercy, take away Thine anger from this city, and from Thy holy house, for we have sinned. Alleluia.' ”

## SECTION IX.

### LOW CELEBRATION.

[Any ceremonies not explained in this section must be sought for in the next, on "High or Solemn Celebration."]

204. *What do you mean by Low Celebration?*

—I mean the administration of the Holy Communion without the adjuncts of assistant ministers and choir. It is wont to be thus administered in the early mornings and on week days.

205. Originally the Holy Eucharist, as the chief service of the Church, was invariably offered with the *full ceremonial*, as it still is in the Greek Church; but as the number of communicants increased it was found necessary to multiply celebrations; and the number of clergy being insufficient to the "solemn" performance of all, the custom arose of "Low" or "simple" celebrations, with the Priest and a Server.

206. *Why is the Priest attended by a Server?*

—Partly in honour of his office, partly to avoid the unseemly necessity of leaving the altar to take journeys backwards and forwards to the credence-table.

207. For the first of these reasons a Bishop has *two* Servers at a low celebration.

208. *What are the duties of the Server?*

—1. To make the responses; in which sense he represents the choir, and thus as it were by his presence protests that it is only under stress of circumstances that the Church permits her highest act of worship to be solemnised without the aid of music. 2. To minister to the Priest. This he does by bringing the bread and wine from the credence; by collecting or receiving the alms; by holding up the edge of the chasuble when the Priest kneels; and by bringing the wine and water for the ablutions. In these functions he represents the “ministers,” *i.e.* the deacon, subdeacon, and acolytes at a High Celebration. He also assists the Priest to vest and unvest in the vestry.

209. *How is the Server vested?*

—Generally in cassock and surplice, or rather *rochet* (or *cotta*),<sup>1</sup> which differs from the surplice in having tight arms. These are more convenient for the server to minister in. Sometimes, however, when the service is said under peculiar circumstances, as when from any cause

---

<sup>1</sup> For a description of these vestments, with illustrations, see further, the Appendix.

the chief Sunday service is a Low Celebration, the Server wears the girded alb. See par. 36.

210. The Priest wears his Eucharistic Vestments. See section iii., more especially paragraphs 46-60.

211. The Server is generally a boy, the Church having from the earliest times consecrated *all ages* to the service of the sanctuary. Children were thus admitted to minister before the Lord, as was the child Samuel (1 Sam. ii. 11). They were formerly set apart for this service by Episcopal benediction. *Lectors* or "Readers" were required to be above the age of infancy, *i.e.* seven years; *acolytes* (from the Greek *ἀκόλουθος*, an attendant, or minister), were admitted at the age of fourteen. It is usual to admit boys into a choir with a form of prayer and blessing; and to choose from among their number the steadiest and most devoutly disposed to act as servers and acolytes.

212. *This service is sometimes called Low "Mass," is it not; as the "solemn" celebration is called "High Mass"? Will you explain this term? Also the word "Eucharist," which I see frequently made use of?*

—Concerning the word "Mass" there is a little uncertainty. The best interpretation derives it from the Hebrew word *MISSAH*, a sacrificial offering (thus *missah nedaba*, Deut. xvi. 10, "the tribute of a free-will offering"), thus referring us to that "Pure offering" (Mal. i. 11), which in every place is to be offered to God on the altars

of the Christian Church. This word *Missah* is derived from the radical MAS, the tribute or homage paid by an inferior to his sovereign—thus reminding us that the Holy Eucharist is that “bounden duty and service,” which as creatures we owe to God our Creator. Others derive it from the phrase: “Ite, missa est”—which *may* be rendered: “Go, you are dismissed,” a sentence which used to be pronounced by the Deacon towards the end of the service. This sentence, however, may be equally correctly rendered: “Go, the ‘Missa’ is over,” and so proves nothing. The advocates of this theory hold, that as the catechumens—that is, those as yet unbaptized—were similarly *dismissed* by the Deacon before the Creed: first, that dismissal was known as *Missa* (*i.e.* *Missio*) *Catechumenorum* (Anglice “the Mass [*i.e.* dismissal] of the catechumens”); the other being the *Missa* (*i.e.* *Missio*) *fidelium*—“the Mass or dismissal of the faithful:” and next, that by an easy transition, not the dismissal, but the service which it ended became known by the terms *Missa Catechumenorum*—*Missa Fidelium*—“Mass of the Catechumens,” and “Mass of the Faithful.” But it is quite as probable that, as the *Missa Fidelium* was properly called the Mass, *MISSAH*, so in a

secondary sense the introductory part was called the Mass of the Catechumens, *i.e.* the only sacrificial offering, or act of homage, they were as yet in a position to pay to God.

The term *Eucharist* is derived from the Greek, and signifies "thanksgiving."

213. The Greeks call the Eucharist the *Liturgy*, *i.e.* the public work or ministry, and also *Synaxis*—the "assembly." Both these words occur in the Scriptures, the former (Acts xiii. 2): "As they ministered to the Lord (*i.e.* said the liturgy, *λειτουργιώντων*) and fasted;" and again (Heb. x. 11): "Every (Jewish) priest standeth daily ministering ("liturgizing"), and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices;" the latter (Levit. xxiii. 36): "Ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto the Lord: it is a solemn assembly."

214. *But does not the thirty-first Article condemn the Mass by that very name?*

—A moment's reflection will serve to shew that such is not the case. For by the "Mass" is simply meant the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper. A Roman Catholic theologian will tell you that all that is *necessary* (though more may be *desirable* for solemnity's sake) for the celebration of the Mass, is that a lawful minister use the words and gestures of Christ over the appointed elements of bread and wine, of which he afterwards partakes. Now all these con-



ditions are preserved in the Prayer Book as necessary to a valid administration of the Lord's Supper. Hence the Church could not condemn the Mass without condemning the institution of Christ. All that she could say would be that the Holy Eucharist, commonly called the Mass, was wrongly so called, because it was not a *MISSAH*, *i.e.* a sacrificial offering. But her best divines have ever taught the reverse. Thus Bishop Overall, who drew up the last part of the Catechism, says: "It is a plain Oblation of Christ's Death once offered, and a representative Sacrifice of it for the sins and for the benefit of the whole world." And Bishop Andrews: "The Eucharist ever was, and by us is considered both as a Sacrament and a Sacrifice." And again, Bishop Cosin, who was chiefly employed by the Church in the last revision of the Prayer Book: "We call the Eucharist a propitiatory Sacrifice, both this and that (*i.e.* the Sacrifice on Calvary), because both of them have force and virtue to appease God's wrath against this sinful world." The doctrine which the Article condemns is the doctrine that the Holy Eucharist is a *Missah* in such a sense as to interfere with the unity and completeness of the Sacrifice on Calvary—the great *Missah nedaba*, or freewill offering of

Himself by Christ—that it is an *independent repetition*, not a continuation and renewed *application* of that Sacrifice.

215. The Latin Mass continued to be used under that name till 1549, “without the varying of any rite or ceremony,” except that after the Communion of the Priest he addressed certain exhortations to the communicants in the mother tongue, and then proceeded to communicate them in both kinds. In this form, however, it was said that “other order” (for “varying of [some] other rites and ceremonies in the Mass”) should “be provided.” This was done in the summer of 1549, when Edward VI.’s First Prayer Book, containing “the Supper of the Lord and the Holy Communion, *commonly called the Mass*,” came into force. It was, in fact, the Old Mass with the promised “varying” of certain “rites and ceremonies.” In 1552, the Articles were first promulgated, and among them that now numbered XXXI. The same year the Second Prayer Book received the sanction of Parliament, which took occasion, however, to say that the changes (which included the omission of the term “Mass”), were occasioned “rather by the curiosity of the ministers and mistakers, than from any other WORTHY cause,” as an Act two years before had done to declare that the First Book (which contained the term) had been drawn up “BY THE AID OF THE HOLY GHOST.” The article, therefore, *could* not have been aimed against the term “Mass,” nor against any doctrine necessarily involved in that term; since both had been sanctioned by the Liturgy which had just been declared the *true and unbiassed voice* of the English Church, assisted by the Spirit of truth.

The term lingered at least so late as 1561, under which date an entry exists: “Paid for 4 lbs. of candles

on Christmas-day morning *for the Mass*, 12*d*; and among the Puritans, the Order in the Prayer Book was ordinarily spoken of as “the English Mass.”

216. *The Priest enters carrying the sacred vessels under a veil. Why is this?*



—From motives of reverence; for which cause also he spreads the corporal or fine linen cloth on the Altar, and then deposits the Chalice (still veiled) on it. The veil is made of silk, and varies in colour, according to the season. See par. 69, 72.

217. *Why does the Priest begin the service at the North or “Gospel” side of the Altar?*

—It was ever the custom to perform the preparatory and subordinate parts of the service at the side, reserving the midst of the Altar for the more solemn portions. The service used to begin at the “Epistle” or south side, probably because of the introductory and subordinate character of the Epistle, as compared with the Gospel. Our own custom may have arisen from the lesser dignity of the *left* hand, or because the north was held to symbolise the heathen world, out of which the Church was gathered.

218. *I have noticed the Priest, after having deposited the sacred vessels on the Altar, descend and kneel awhile in private prayer. Why does he do this?*

—To prepare himself for the service in which he is about to engage. For the same reason he has already recited the hymn: “Come Holy Ghost,” or certain other prayers in the vestry. Before the Altar he usually says privately the Psalm: “Give sentence with me, O God” (Ps. xliii.), the fitness of which you will readily see; then going to the Altar, he says, still privately, the “Introit” for the day, adding aloud the Lord’s Prayer and the Collect: “Almighty God, unto whom all hearts be open.” In the former of these prayers the Server makes no reply, because, though said aloud, it is part of the Priest’s preparation; to the latter he replies “Amen,” extending the preparation to the people.

219. *Why does the Priest now turn to the people?*

—To read the Lesson from Genesis xx. It was an ancient custom, especially in penitential seasons, to read a lesson from the Old Testament at the beginning of the Mass. These were frequently interspersed with responses. Those now used here are the ninefold “*Kyrie Eleison*,”

or "Lord have mercy upon us," said thrice to God the Father, thrice to God the Son, and thrice to God the Holy Ghost;—to Each Person, as an old treatise says, because we sin against each; and *thrice* to Each, because we offend in three ways, in thought, word, and deed. After the tenth Commandment, another and slightly varied *Kyrie* is said, corresponding to a prayer for remission of sins, which was wont to be here said.

220. *Why does the Prayer for the sovereign follow here?*

—In accordance with the command of St. Paul (1 Tim. ii. 2), that prayers and supplications should be made for kings and those in authority.

221. *Hitherto the service has been said at the north side, but I see that the Server here removes the book to the Epistle corner, where the Priest says the collect. Why is this?*

—Because we here begin a new stage of the service. What has gone before has been as it were the *general preparation*. We now come to a more *particular preparation*: and this is fitly ushered in by the Collect, a short prayer which *collects* as it were the needs of the Church, and presents them to God.

222. *I see that the Priest reads the Collect with his hands extended. Will you explain the meaning of this act?*

—He uses this action in the more solemn prayers, lifting up his hands like Moses, when he prayed against Amalek (Exod. xvii. 11). St. Paul alludes to the custom as an adjunct of earnest supplication (1 Tim. ii. 8), “that men pray everywhere, *lifting up holy hands.*”<sup>1</sup> By this action he spreads as it were the needs of his congregation and of the whole Church before the Lord—as Hezekiah did the letter of Rabshakeh. (2 Kings xix. 14.)

223. *Why is the Epistle read on this side?*

—The Priest turning to the people—which was undoubtedly the ancient custom—has now his right hand towards the north. That side is therefore reserved for the Gospel, which represents the Christian dispensation, as the Epistle does the Jewish.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not a little singular that the marginal reference is to Malachi i. 11: “And in every place incense shall be offered and a Pure Offering,” thus referring this “lifting up of holy hands” to the oblation of the Holy Eucharist; and this gathers additional strength when we recall the scope of the Epistle to St. Timothy—an Epistle written *to a bishop* and referring chiefly to questions affecting *the clergy*.

224. The changes from south to north, and to the midst of the altar, at the Epistle, Gospel, and Creed, and back again to the Epistle corner for the oblations, are also explained to represent the journeys of our Lord in His Passion from Caiaphas to Pilate, and from Pilate to Herod, and from Herod again to Pilate. ~

225. *Why does the Priest say, "Here endeth the Epistle," while he makes no such statement after the Gospel?*

—To shew that the Jewish dispensation was to cease, while the Gospel is to endure throughout all ages.

226. *The Epistle is sometimes taken from the Old, and sometimes from the New Testament. Can you give me a reason?*

—To shew that the two Testaments meet in Christ, who is represented by the Gospel; hence as Innocent the Third says, the person who reads or sings the Epistle may be said to represent John the Baptist, the forerunner, who closed the line of prophets, and pointed out the Lamb of God that taketh away the sin of the world. Not unfrequently the Epistle, when taken from the Old Testament, contains the prophecy, the fulfilment of which is recorded by the Gospel, as may be seen in the Holy Week Epistles and Gospels.

227. *The Priest says the Creed in the midst of the Altar, first extending his hands and saying, "I believe in One God," then joining them again, and saying the rest of the Creed with the Server. Will you explain these ceremonies?*

—He goes to the midst of the Altar because a more solemn part of the service is now beginning, and because the Creed, as the solemn profession of our faith made in God's presence, is a very direct act of worship to Him. It is begun by the Priest and taken up by the people, to shew that faith springs from Christ, and through Him is established among the people. Lastly, the Priest, having as it were expressed by the spreading out of his hands the solemnity of the action in which he is about to engage, joins them in token of inward recollection, and as a symbol that both Priest and people have one common faith.

228. *Why is a reverence made at the words, "and was made man," and again at, "worshipped and glorified?"*

—In the first case as an acknowledgment of our belief in and veneration of Our Lord's Incarnation. To bow the head at this passage is a very



ancient custom. The Augustinian Friars first introduced the custom of *kneeling*, which has since become general in the West. In the second place, the reverence expresses our belief in the Divinity of the Holy Ghost. It is probably as old as the Creed itself, the passage being introduced against the heresy of Macedonius, who denied that the Holy Spirit was an object of Divine worship.

229. *The Priest now begins the Offertory. What do you understand by the term?*

—I understand three things : first the offerings made by the people, which the Server now collects, or receives from some other person, and brings to the Priest; secondly, the oblation of the Elements, which now takes place; lastly, the term is used to denote the sentence (more properly called the *Offertory-Antiphon*), which he reads immediately after the Creed, while the people are making their offerings.

230. *He reads the sentence still facing the East. Why is this? And please to explain in general why in the greater part of the Celebration he keeps his back to the people?*

—I will reply to you in the words of the Bishops in their answer to the Puritans in 1661 : “ The

minister's turning to the people is not most convenient throughout the whole ministration. When he speaks to them, as in Lessons, Absolution and Benedictions, it is convenient that he turn to them; when he speaks for them to God, it is fit that they should all turn another way, as the Ancient Church ever did." This was also the position of the Jewish priest, who ministered "before the Lord" (Levit. vi. 7; xxiv. 3) at the Altar of incense and at the table of Shew-bread, *i. e.* facing the hidden mercy-seat beyond. As to the position being observed in this place, it is sufficient to say that the Priest being engaged in an act of ministry before the Lord, although in the presence and on behalf of the people, he only turns from the Altar for some weighty cause, and in *direct* addresses to the flock.

231. *Why are the alms which the Priest receives from the Server and lays on the Altar, almost immediately removed again and placed on the Credence?*

—The third, fourth, and fifth of the Apostolical Canons forbid that anything be presented upon the Altar besides ears of new corn or grapes, and oil for the candlestick, and incense for the

time of the holy oblation. And although the alms of the faithful, which are given in lieu of offerings in kind, are fitly offered by the Priest, yet it is not expedient that they should remain upon the Altar, especially during the oblation and consecration of the Elements.

232. *But are not the "alms" mentioned together with the "oblations" in the prayer for the Church militant?*

—Yes: but that does not necessitate their presence upon the Altar at that time. Formerly the bread and wine were offered by the faithful in kind, together with other like offerings, from which indeed the oblations were separated and offered on the Altar. The oblations thus included all the offerings, though a part only was offered on the Altar. Similarly the presence of the oblations on the Altar serves for the alms, out of which they are wont to be provided.

233. *I see that the Server in bringing the Elements from the Credence, brings wine in his right hand, and water in his left. For what is this water?*

—To mingle with the wine. This is a most ancient custom, being mentioned by some of the earliest Fathers of the Church, especially by

St. Justin Martyr and St. Cyril of Alexandria. Bingham, the ecclesiastical antiquary, by no means a ritualist, testifies to its extreme antiquity.

234. *Why is this done ?*

—Partly from a very ancient tradition that the wine was so mingled at the Last Supper, such being the almost universal custom of ancient times : partly from symbolical reasons. Thus it represents the mingled tide of blood and water which flowed from our Saviour's side ; and so reminds us (like that) of the two great Sacraments of the Gospel, Baptism and the Eucharist, the latter of which cannot exist without the former. It is likewise symbolical of the Incarnation : the wine as the more precious element representing Our Lord's Godhead ; the water, as the inferior, His manhood ; for which reason, and also so as not to impair the nature of the wine, only a few drops of water are added.

235. *I see that it is said of the element of the Bread that " it shall suffice that it be such as is usual to be eaten, but the best and purest wheat bread that may conveniently be gotten." What is the meaning of this direction ?*

—The first clause is a *permission* to use unleavened bread, and a declaration of the validity

of the Eucharist when so administered; the latter is a cautel or safe-guard enjoined from a motive of reverence, as well as to guard against any impurities in the bread, which might endanger the validity of the Sacrament.<sup>1</sup>

236. Anciently *unleavened* bread was invariably used in the West, and was prepared in the form of wafers. This order was continued in the First Prayer Book of Edward VI. In the second, as now, ordinary leavened bread was declared *sufficient*. In the Eastern Church leavened bread is used.<sup>2</sup> The controversy on these respective uses is too intricate to enter into here. It is sufficient to give the *reasons* assigned by either Communion. The Western Church celebrates in unleavened bread (though allowing the *validity* of leavened), because it is believed that our Lord did the same at the Last Supper, when He ate the Passover with His disciples; and because it is fitting that some particular kind of bread should be reserved for so great a Mystery; while the Greek pleads (though by no means clearly) Apostolic tradition: the advantage of showing more distinctly the difference between the Passover and the Eucharist; and the fitness of using the *most perfect kind* of bread (which they assert leavened bread to be) for the Holy Sacrament. As to the *symbolic* use of either,

---

<sup>1</sup> Ordinary baker's bread is strongly impregnated with alum, bone-dust, and other foreign substances.

<sup>2</sup> It should be added that the eastern use of leavened bread differs wholly from ours. In the first place, *leaven* is used, not *yeast*; in the next the bread is made expressly for the Eucharist in little loaves, an entire one of which is used for every celebration.

the unleavened bread is held to show the sinlessness of Our Lord's human nature, and the purity and spotlessness of the Church which is His body (*see* Heb. iv. 15; Eph. v. 27; i. 22. 23); and so the necessity of each individual Christian to keep himself unspotted from the world, for as St. Paul says, "We being many are one bread, for we are all partakers of that one Bread." (1 Cor. x. 17; compare 1 Cor. v. 7.) On the other hand, the leavened bread, like the mixed chalice, is held to represent the two Natures of our Lord. That either may lawfully have a symbolic meaning seems clear from the fact that both leavened and unleavened bread was offered with the peace-offering under the Law. (Levit. vii. 11-13.)

237. While then, we say with the Council of Florence that "the Body of Christ is truly consecrated in wheaten bread, whether with or without leaven;" and with Theorian, a learned Prelate of the Eastern Church, that "if the Divine power transforms the oblations into the Body and Blood of Christ, it is superfluous to dispute whether they were of leavened or unleavened bread, of red or of white wine: or to pursue such curious and idle enquiries with respect to these tremendous mysteries;" we would add, with the same council, that it is more fitting that "every priest should consecrate according to the custom of his Church, be it Eastern or Western;" and that, if leavened bread be used, it is only reverent that it be specially made for the service of the Altar, without admixture of foreign matter, and of such consistency as not to crumble, since, as St. Cyril says, we should most carefully guard lest a crumb fall of that which is more precious than gold or precious stones."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> "Men must not think less to be received in part than in the whole, but in each of them the whole Body of our

238. *How is the oblation made?*

—Custom varies; some priests offering the elements in either kind separately; others both kinds simultaneously. The same diversity obtained in the mediæval Church of England; the former usage prevailing in churches which followed the York rite; the latter in those (by far the most numerous), in which the Sarum and Hereford uses were observed. The first is the general usage of the West, the second of the Eastern Church.

239. *Will you explain both these rites?*

—In the former case the Priest, having received from the Server the bread on its dish, takes a sufficient quantity and putting it on the paten, returns to the midst of the Altar, where he elevates it, privately praying the Holy Trinity to

---

Saviour Jesu Christ." (*Edw. VI. First Prayer Book.*) St. Chrysostom, in his letter to Innocent, Bishop of Rome, describing the violence of the soldiers in expelling him from his Church, says that they penetrated even where the holy gifts (*i.e.* the reserved Sacrament) lay; and that the Most Holy Blood of Christ was thrown over the soldiers' coats. In our ordinary use of baker's bread the chancel floor is frequently strewn with what that "godly bishop" (as the homilies call him) would have called "the most holy flesh of Christ."

accept this oblation at the hands of His unworthy minister ; then, having received the wine in like manner, he similarly elevates the chalice, saying privately, “ We offer unto Thee, O Lord, the cup of salvation.” In the latter case, after having received the elements in both kinds from the server, he places the paten on the top of the chalice, and elevating both together, says the same prayer of oblation, as in the former case over the bread.

240. *What do these rites represent ?*

—The whole offertory, including both the alms and the oblations, show the duty of honouring God with the first fruits of our substance (Prov. iii. 9), the oblation of the bread and wine being a kind of secondary *missah*, or offering made to God in acknowledgment of our dependence on Him for the fruits of the earth, not less than for the increase of our substance. As a solemn setting apart of the elements to their high and holy end—and so an act having reference to and anticipatory of the consecration—the oblation of the elements refers us to the predetermination of God before all time to work out our salvation by the Incarnation and Death of His Son, “pre-



paring" in His secret council "a Body" as the means of that salvation, when the fulness of time should come. Or as some ritualists have it, as the Consecration shows forth in sacramental verity the sacrifice of the Lord's Death (1 Cor. xi. 26), so the anticipatory oblation of the elements shows in symbol the sacrifice of our Lord's life of humiliation, His Labours, Sorrows, Watchings, Hunger, and the like—which, beginning from the first moment of His Conception, had their perfect ending in His last great humiliation even unto the Death of the Cross.<sup>1</sup> The *separate* oblation of the elements here, like their separate consecration hereafter, would signify the parting of Our Lord's Body and Soul in death, which was the culmination of His life of sacrifice, and so would stand for that whole life now begun to be shown forth:

---

<sup>1</sup> So Goar (in St. Chrys. Lit. No. 33) explains the "Great Entrance," which is the corresponding part of the Greek Liturgy. Western ritualists, however, vary the symbolism, saying that Our Lord's Advent and Ministry are represented in the *Missa Catechumenorum*; the former by the Introit, the latter by the Gospel; and His Passion (as also His Resurrection and Ascension) in the *Missa Fidelium*. According to this view the oblation corresponds to Our Lord's delivery by Pilate to be crucified.

while their being offered *together* here would show the *unity* of the Eucharistic Sacrifice, though offered with two distinct, though not independent, consecrations hereafter.

241. *I see that the Priest after making the oblations, places the Chalice on the midst of the Altar, and having arranged the paten in front of it, covers the former with a linen veil, and the latter with a corner of the corporal.<sup>1</sup> Please to explain these actions.*

—He does so primarily to preserve the oblations from dirt, or other danger of irreverence. As a symbolical act, this veiling of the oblations represents either the clothing of the Divinity in substance of our nature at the Incarnation; or, as others take it, our Lord's being clothed in a purple robe, and crowned with thorns in the Passion.




---

<sup>1</sup> The "Corporal" is a square of linen placed on the Altar for the Chalice and Paten to stand on; the linen veil for the chalice is smaller, and is called the "pall."

242. *Why does the Priest return to the Epistle corner of the Altar, where the Server pours a few drops of water over his fingers?*

—As a symbol of the purity with which he should approach the Holy Mysteries; for which cause it is customary for him to recite to himself the last six verses of the 26th Psalm during this time; the first word of which in Latin is *Lavabo*, “I will wash,” for which reason the ceremony itself came to be known as “the Lavabo.” The custom is mentioned by St. Clement, St. Cyril, and other early writers.

243. *What takes place after the Lavabo?*

—The Priest returns to the middle of the Altar, and extending his hands, says: “Let us pray for the whole state of Christ’s Church militant here in earth.” Then, placing his hands on the Altar, he continues the act of oblation down to the words “Thy Divine Majesty;” when he says the rest of the prayer with joined hands, pausing at the words: “sickness or any other adversity,” to commemorate privately by name any that need his prayers.

244. *How are we to regard this second oblation?*

—It is merely a continuation of the former. The Priest having washed his hands, and purified his heart by inward prayer, goes again to the Altar, returning as it were with renewed favour to the act of oblation. In this second act he uses two gestures: first he spreads his hands, and (sometimes) turns towards the people as inviting their co-operation both in the oblation and in the intercessions which accompany it; next he places his hands on the Altar to show that it is in dependence on Christ that he ventures to offer the Eucharistic Sacrifice; in the prayer which follows he joins his hands to show that Priest and people alike should share in the acts of intercession which it contains.

245. *I think I have seen the Priest disjoin his hands at the words: "departed in thy faith and fear." Was this by chance, or had he any reason for doing so?*

—It is an old custom to use this gesture at the Commemoration of the departed, perhaps as showing that the Church embraces in her bosom all the faithful, whether living or dead.

The English Liturgy, like the Roman, the Ambrosian, and the Æthiopic, has *two* commemorations of the departed, one before, the other after the consecration. The

first answers to the Commemoration of departed Saints; the second to the "Memento" or prayer for the dead in general. Various reasons are assigned by Western ritualists for the placing of the Commemoration of the living *before*, and that of the departed *after* the Consecration, which thus, like Phineas of old, stands between the living and the dead, bringing to each the blessings needful to their respective conditions. It may be observed, too, that the two commemorations of the dead, together with that of the living, include the whole Church of Christ, both that position of it "militant here in earth"—and that which rests "from its labours," whether in the courts of heaven—the Church Triumphant—or in the intermediate state:—the living, the Saints, the dead in general. On the second Commemoration of the Departed, see further paragraph 307 below.

246. *Whom should the Priest remember at the pause after these words?*

—He should at least call to mind the Saint, if any, whom the Church that day commemorates, and the Saint in whose honour the particular Church is dedicated; with others whom his devotion may suggest, as the patron of the diocese, and the like. The Eastern liturgies first make mention of "the Fathers, Patriarchs, Prophets, Apostles, Preachers, Evangelists, Martyrs, Confessors, Virgins, and every just spirit made perfect;" and then go on to mention specially by name "the Mother of God and ever Virgin

Mary; the holy prophet John, the forerunner and Baptist," the Saint of the day, "and all thy Saints." The Roman order agrees with this in mentioning the Blessed Virgin first, and concluding with "All Saints," but commemorates with these the twelve Apostles and twelve principal Martyrs of the early Church.

247. Formerly the names of those to be prayed for in the Liturgy were written on tablets, or parchments, which, from being folded twice, were called the *diptychs*: and in these the same threefold division was observed. The first column contained the name of the Patriarch, Archbishop and Bishop, of the reigning Emperor, and of the benefactors of the Church; the second a list of the Saints specially honoured there; the third the names of those who had fallen asleep in Christ.

248. *Why does the Priest mention the names of those for whom he wishes to pray in secret rather than aloud?*

—It is a very old custom for the Priest to say certain prayers in the Liturgy in that way, especially the Commemorations; perhaps to stir himself up to greater recollection, or because these prayers were of a more private nature, and so it was not necessary for the people to follow them, but rather to be occupied with their own private devotions. Sometimes he prays aloud,

in imitation of Our Lord, who spake aloud the seven words from the Cross; at others, like Hannah, he speaks "in his heart, only his" lips move, but his "voice is not heard." (1 Sam.i.13.) This, while it gives the people an opportunity of offering the Sacrifice for their own intentions,<sup>1</sup> or to exercise themselves in private prayer, is not without symbolical teaching; both as representing the two kinds of prayer, vocal and mental, in which Christians are wont to engage, and as showing that here upon earth we see the mysteries of God "through a glass darkly," believing with an entire faith, but only partially comprehending.

249. *Why does the Priest turn toward the people when he says the Exhortation, "Ye that do truly?"*

—He now breaks off the Sacrifice, as it were, to prepare the communicants. Hence he turns to those whom he is addressing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Intentions are the particular objects which we wish to gain (whether for ourselves or others) by any act of devotion. Thus the Lord's Prayer is said by the people at a Baptism to obtain the grace of perseverance for the newly baptized infant.

250. *Why is he directed to address "them that come to receive the Holy Communion?"*

—Because the acts that follow are intended to prepare the communicants, and therefore do not refer to those who are present only to worship.

251. *Perhaps this is the reason for a custom which I have noticed in some churches, for the communicants alone to say the Confession which follows. Am I right in this supposition?*

—Perfectly so. The Exhortation shows that the Confession and Absolution refer chiefly, at all events, to "those that are minded to receive." I may remark, however, that the rubric orders the Confession to be made "by one of the ministers" (*i.e.* the server at Low Celebration), "in the name of" the communicants, evidently intending him to recite it *alone*. There is, however, no objection to the communicants (or indeed the whole congregation) joining him in this act.

252. This rubric is an incidental proof of the Church's desire to retain Pre-Reformation usages when they are such as not, in her judgment, to involve erroneous teaching. For by the use of the word "Minister" here, she implies that the custom of having a lay Server in the numerous cases in which there was only one Priest, was to be retained; while in the employment of the general



phrase, "one of the ministers," she points to the full or solemn celebration with deacon and sub-deacon) who were technically called the *ministri*<sup>1)</sup>—the solemnising "these high and holy mysteries with all the suffrages and due order appointed for the same," as Edw. VI.'s First Book worded it. So also the direction to the minister to say it [alone] "in the name of" the communicants, was quite in accordance with the idea that the server, or the ministers and choir, represented and acted for the people.<sup>2</sup>

253. *I should like you to explain one or two things in connection with the Absolution. And first, is it (as the name would seem to imply) a loosing from sin?*

—It is no doubt designed as a *ritual* cleansing of those who are to feast upon the Sacrifice; and

<sup>1</sup> A term which included, however, the taper-bearers, thurifer, and acolytes.

<sup>2</sup> It is not meant that the Church contemplates a *dumb* attendance at the Holy Eucharist on the part of the people—the "parson and clerk" theory of Divine worship—but that they represent in their ministerial *acts* the people's participation in offering the Sacrifice with and at the hands of the Priest. At the same time I am not sorry for the opportunity of hinting to those whom it may concern that *noisy* responses are specially out of place in a Low Celebration, the leading idea of which is *stillness* and reverent quiet, just as that of a High or choral Celebration is a jubilant rejoicing before the Lord; though even then the music should be of a softer and more subdued character than that employed for the Psalter.

if joined with true sorrow, does convey or rather seal pardon for those lesser faults of human frailty which destroy not, though they impair the grace of God in the soul. When united with a firm sorrow and desire for amendment, it bears the same relation to sacramental Absolution, as spiritual does to actual Communion.<sup>1</sup> It would seem to be called "the Absolution" from the prayer from which it is taken, beginning with that word, rather than in the strict sense in which the homily uses the word, to represent a sacramental act composed of several distinct parts—all of which, except a form of words, invoking God's pardon and forgiveness, are here wanting.

254. *Yet the Priest would seem to use it "as one having authority." He extends his hand towards the people, as in blessing, and makes the sign of the Cross over them.*

—The prayer called the Absolution is undoubtedly a solemn benediction at the hand of God's minister, and as such should be reverently and thankfully received; and to those who feel them-

---

<sup>1</sup> Spiritual Communion is described and explained in paragraph 304.

selves in dispositions of grace, it is a *seal* and *earnest* of the pardon they have already obtained; and a means of deepening and quickening their sorrow for past sin. Indeed, an Absolution, in the *liturgical* sense of the word, differs only from a benediction in the kind of blessings it invokes. Thus, while it cannot restore lost grace, it *can* strengthen and increase that which remains.

255. Formerly the Confession and the first part of the Absolution were interchanged between Priest and people, the Priest adding the last clause. The same was done at Prime and Compline. In the same way at Matins the first lesson of each nocturn was preceded by an "Absolution," as every lesson was by a benediction. Of these one only (that for the third nocturn on Sundays and festivals, and for the ferial nocturn on Tuesdays and Saturdays), contained any allusion to the remission of sins: "From the chains of our sins may the almighty and merciful Lord absolve us." The other two are merely benedictions with a slightly penitential aspect: "Hear our prayers and *pity* us;" "God of his merciful kindness *help* us." The form at Prime and Compline, and in the Mass, was that now used in the Communion service, omitting the clause: "Our heavenly Father . . . and true faith turn to him," and ending at "everlasting life."

256. *How does the Priest resume the Sacrifice?*

—He turns to the Altar and says the Preface, or

introduction to the Canon, *i.e.* the Consecration. But as a preparation for this more solemn part of the Liturgy he first says, elevating his hands: "Lift up your hearts;" the people replying: "We lift them up unto the Lord." Then joining his hands in meek acknowledgment of the Divine mercies, he says: "Let us give thanks unto our Lord God;" to which the people answer: "It is meet and right so to do."

257. *Explain these sentences.*

—In the first the Priest invites us to withdraw our attention wholly from the things of earth, that we may join with Angels and Archangels in offering the Divine Oblation. The people in their reply assert their readiness to do so. He next bids us begin our offering with the giving of thanks, which we acknowledge to be meet and right. In the Preface, the Priest as it were catches up and amplifies this our acknowledgment, declaring it "very meet, right, and our bounden duty," "at all times and in all places" to "give thanks" to God.

258. *What are the "Proper" Prefaces?*

—They are clauses in which we specially commemorate, at certain seasons, particular mercies,

for which it is fitting to give thanks at that time.

259. *What are these seasons?*

—The Octaves of Christmas, Easter, Ascension, and Whitsun days; and the Feast of the Holy Trinity. The service for the Coronation of the Sovereign has also a Proper Preface.

260. *Why are the words “Holy Father” omitted on Trinity Sunday?*

—Because the Sacrifice is then offered specially to God as the One in Three, not as at other times to the Father alone.

261. *What is the Sanctus?*

—It is a very ancient hymn of the Church taken from Isaiah vi. 3. The threefold repetition of the epithet “Holy” (which occurs also Rev. iv. 8), has ever been regarded as an acknowledgment of the doctrine of the Holy Trinity. It occurs also in the “Te Deum.” It is called the *Sanctus* from the first word in the Latin—sometimes the *Ter-Sanctus*—(and by the Easterns the *Trishagion*), or *thrice holy*, from the threefold repetition of the word. The Greeks also call it the *Epinikion* or “triumphal hymn.”

262. *Why do the people join in at the Sanctus?*

—In imitation of the heavenly host, of whom we read that “one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy.”

263. This part of the service is of extreme antiquity, and occurs in every Liturgy extant. It was wont to be accompanied with extraordinary marks of solemnity. In later times the Server rang a small bell here, as also at the Consecration, to excite the attention of the people to the acts about to take place; or the Sacristan rang one of the church bells—generally one hung over the chancel for this purpose, and hence called the *Sanctus-bell*; <sup>1</sup> as well with the same design as to notify the fact to the parishioners who were unable to attend the service.

264. *I notice that the Priest at the beginning of the Preface disjoins his hands; at the words “Therefore with Angels,” or at the beginning of the Proper Preface, he lays them on the Altar; and at the Sanctus, joins them before his breast. What is the meaning of these gestures?*

—They represent the varied dispositions with which he says the Preface. With disjoined hands,

---

<sup>1</sup> It was also called *Sancte-bell*, *Sacring-bell*, and *Saunce-bell*. *Sanctus-bell* cotes remain in many of our churches, and the bell itself in some, as Long Compton, Warwickshire; and Claydon, Suffolk. The large bell was, however, generally rung at the Consecration.

signifying that at all times, and in all places, it is meet and right to praise God ; hands laid on the Altar, as signifying both that it is *through* and *by* Christ that we should give thanks, and that it is *for* Him—for His love as displayed in the various acts of our Redemption, which we commemorate in the Proper Prefaces—that we are especially bound to give thanks ; hands joined before the breast, because he unites himself in the Sanctus with the heavenly host, and with the people ; at the same time he bows, as with them, in adoration of the Divine Majesty.

265. *Do not these minute acts tend to disturb the Priest ? An attention to such trifles must, I imagine, be very distracting ; they seem to me to be too insignificant to demand his care.*

—In the service of God nothing can be trivial or insignificant, or beneath the notice of those who are appointed to conduct it. You will find that the most spiritual among the holy men of old whom the Church commemorates, were remarkable for the care which they exercised over the minutest details of Divine worship. As for their tending to disturb the Priest, they have a precisely opposite effect. They help him to

realise the acts in which he is engaged. Besides which, as long as we are in the flesh we must worship with the body, as well as with the spirit and understanding; and as *some* posture must be employed, it is more seemly to follow a fixed tradition, than to act hap-hazard. Lastly, by prescribing gestures, the Church helps to preserve true doctrine and the idea of worship in both Priest and people.<sup>1</sup>

266. Whence it was that Bucer, who wished to protestantise the English Church, and to remove every mark of her inherent Catholicity from her Prayer Book, objected to the retention of the "gestures"—*nunquam satis execrandæ Missæ gestus*, as he styles them.

267. *What is the prayer which the Priest says kneeling at the midst of the Altar?*

—It is a humble acknowledgment of his own unworthiness to execute the ministry which he is about to perform, and of that of the communicants to join with him in the Sacrifice by feasting on the Sacred Victim who is now about to be offered. Whence it is called the "Prayer of Humble Access," or the "Prayer of Address," as the Coronation Service has it.

---

<sup>1</sup> See further, Note A, at the end.



268. *Why are the Communicants alone mentioned here ?*

—Because in the Primitive ages all the faithful, *i.e.* all baptised Christians not under discipline, were in the habit of communicating with the Priest; a godly discipline, which the Church wishes it were possible to be now observed.

269. *Does the Church then contemplate the presence of none but those who are going to communicate ?*

—I have already shown you that this is not the case by the direction to the Priest to address certain exhortations specially to those of the congregation “who are minded to receive the Holy Communion.” The Church does not contemplate the departure of any of her baptized children, till the Priest “lets them depart” with the final benediction.

270. Bucer, whose opposition to the Sacrifice is mentioned above, yet did not venture to deny that the Eucharist was the appointed and especial way of keeping holy Sunday and the festivals of the Church. He even wished to make it *compulsory* on all persons to communicate at these times, as the Church was wont to *require* all to “hear Mass.” But he happily failed to carry his point. People were still left at liberty to “receive” or to “be present,” as they judged it better to their soul’s health.

271. *Why is the Prayer of Consecration called the "Canon"?*

—From a Greek word signifying "the rule," because it embodies the unchanging form to be used everywhere in offering the Eucharistic Sacrifice: and which was not left to the discretion of the Bishop or Priest, as much of the other parts of the Service was in early times.

272. *Why is the Priest to say it "standing before the" Altar?*

—Because this is the position of a sacrificing Priest (Rev. v. 6; Heb. x. 11). See also paragraph 230.

273. *Why is the Altar here and elsewhere called the Lord's Table?*

—Because from it the sacred mysteries are dispensed. The Jewish Altar was so called (Malachi i. 7), as also the altars at which heathen sacrifices were offered (1 Cor. x. 21).

273\*. The Christian Altar is also our *table of Show-bread* (Exod. xxv. 23. 30; Heb. ix. 2). Bishop Andrews says: "The Holy Eucharist being considered as a Sacrifice, it is fitly called an Altar, which again is fitly called a Table, the Eucharist being considered as a Sacrament." This two-fold character of the Christian Altar accounts for its being made of *wood* or *stone* indifferently. In the

Eastern Church the Altar is called the "Holy Table," or "Lord's Table." In Edward VI.'s First Prayer Book it was styled "God's Board." In the Coronation Service both terms, "Altar" and "Lord's Table," are employed.

274. *Of what does the Canon consist?*

—Of the Commemoration of the Passion, the Invocation, and the Consecration Proper.

275. *What is the Commemoration of the Passion?*

—The first part of the Canon, down to the words "until His coming again."

276. *What is the Invocation?*

—The part of the Canon beginning: "Hear us, O Merciful Father," down to "may be partakers of His Most Blessed Body and Blood."

277. *What is the Consecration Proper?*

—The words, "This is my Body"—"This is my Blood," are the words by which the Consecration is effected; but the last part of the Canon, beginning at, "Who in the same night," is called the Consecration.

278. *Why does the Priest uncover the Oblations at the end of the Invocation?*

—To prepare them for the Consecration which

follows. As a symbolical act, this unveiling represents the stripping off of our Lord's garments at the Crucifixion.

279. *Does the Priest do anything else in preparation for the Consecration ?*

—Yes, he first separates his hands, and then gently rubs the thumb and forefinger of each within the corporal. He does so to free them from any grain of dust or other substance that may have adhered to them since the Lavabo, and also in token of reverence due to the Sacred Mysteries he is about to celebrate.

280. *Will you explain the other actions connected with the Canon ?*

—He begins it with his hands joined, in token of recollection, and with eyes lifted up to the Father in heaven, before whom he is offering the Holy Oblation ; at the Invocation he spreads the palms of his hands over the oblations, as it were calling down upon them the Divine benediction ; for which reason he makes the sign of the Cross over each element as he mentions it by name ; in the other actions he imitates, as near as may be, Our Lord's own gestures, taking the paten into his hands when he says, "He took";

breaking the Bread when he says, "He brake it." He lays his hands on either element as he pronounces the words of consecration, in imitation of the Jewish priests, who were wont to lay their hands on the head of the victim.

281. *Does he use any other gestures in the Canon?*

—Yes, he bows down over the Altar at the words, "Who in the same night"; at the words, "When He had given thanks," he makes the sign of the Cross over the paten with his right hand; and directly he has pronounced the words of consecration, "This is My Body," he genuflects; he elevates the larger wafer or bread at the words, "Do this in remembrance of Me." Similarly, at the consecration of the chalice, he makes the sign of the Cross at the words, "When He had given thanks;" immediately after the words, "This is my Blood," he genuflects; then rising, he elevates the chalice, as he finishes the Consecration prayer.

282. *Why does he bow down over the Altar?*

—To show the recollection and fervour with which he should engage in the solemn act of consecration.

283. *Why does he make the sign of the Cross over the paten and chalice at the words "when He had given thanks"?*

—To imitate more closely the action of Our Lord, who, before He "brake" the bread, "blessed" it. (St. Matt. xxvi. 26.)

284. *Why does he genuflect after each Consecration?*

—In lowliest worship of our Lord, now present under the forms of bread and wine.

285. *Ought we then to worship Christ in the Sacrament?*

—Yes; as God He is to be worshipped, wherever and under whatever conditions He vouchsafes to manifest Himself. "We adore and worship Christ in the Eucharist," says Bishop Ridley, who died for the Reformed faith; "We behold with the eyes of faith Him present after grace, and spiritually set on the Table; and we worship Him that sitteth above, and is worshipped of Angels." So also Bishop Forbes: "Christ in the Eucharist is to be adored with Divine worship, inasmuch as His living and glorified Body is present therein." And again, the devout Bishop Jeremy Taylor: "Place thy-

self upon thy knees in the devotest and humblest position of worshippers, and think it not much in the lowest manner to worship the King of men and angels, the Lord of heaven and earth, the great lover of souls, and the Saviour of the body; Him whom all the Angels of God worship . . . For if Christ be not there after a peculiar manner, whose body do we receive? But if He be present not in mystery only, but in blessing also, why do we not worship? But all the Christians always did so from time immemorial."

*286. Does not the 28th Article say that the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper is not to be worshipped? And the declaration at the end of the Communion Service, that no adoration is intended, or ought to be done to the Sacramental Bread and Wine, or to any corporal presence of Christ's natural Flesh and Blood? How do these statements accord with what you have said above?*

—The 28th Article says that our Lord ordained the Sacrament not for the purpose of being worshipped, but of being received. It condemns those who professed great reverence for the Blessed Sacrament by constantly being present

for purposes of *worship*, whether at the celebration of the Eucharist, and especially when it was *lifted up* for the worship of the faithful; or in presence of it when *received*; or when it was *carried* to the sick or in processions: and yet neglected *the very end and aim* of its institution, its frequent reception by all the faithful. St. Chrysostom had done the same 1100 years before. The "Declaration" denies that adoration is due to the Sacramental Bread and Wine, which are but the *veils* which shroud our Lord, and as such are no more to be worshipped than were His *clothes* when He was upon earth; or to any *corporal* presence of Christ's *natural* Flesh and Blood; for His presence is not after a corporal or natural manner, but after the manner of a Sacrament.<sup>1</sup>

287. *What do you mean by "after the manner of a Sacrament"?*

---

<sup>1</sup> A truth which the Catechism of the Council of Trent affirms with equal clearness: "The Body of Christ cannot be rendered present by change of place, as it would then cease to be in heaven; for whatever is moved, must of necessity cease to occupy the place from which it is moved." Part ii. ch. iv. q. 39. And again at greater length Quest. 42: "The Body of Our Lord present in the Eucharist not as in a place," or by way of *location*.



—I mean a supernatural and mysterious manner which it is impossible for us to understand while we see through a glass darkly. Just as our Lord's Body after His resurrection passed, contrary to the nature of His natural Body, through closed doors, so that same Body, seated on the Father's right hand in heaven, is yet present on our Altars, not *corporally* or by way of location, as moving from one place to another, but by extension. We cannot understand how His Godhead remained in heaven, and yet took flesh in Mary's womb; neither can we understand how His whole Nature, Manhood and Godhead, is now in heaven, and yet is truly present on our Altars.

288. *But why does the Priest worship after each Consecration ?*

—I might answer you in the words of Bishop Poynt, that "the Flesh of Christ is to be adored, although a creature, by reason of the Divinity to which it is united." The Flesh of Christ, although a creature, is worthy of adoration. But, in truth, these cannot be separated from His Divinity. Wheresoever the Flesh of Christ is, there is He Himself *whole and entire*,

His Body, His Blood, His Soul and Godhead ; and as such He is worshipped, whether under the form of Bread or of Wine. But the twofold adoration has also a *theological* meaning. The separate consecration of each element represents the separation of our Lord's Soul and Body on the Cross, which was the consummation of His Sacrifice. By the twofold consecration the Priest shows forth this crowning act of sacrifice by way of memorial before God ; by his twofold adoration he expresses the truth that " Christ being dead, dieth no more ;" that the Sacrifice on Calvary was His one oblation of Himself with " shedding of blood," of which the Eucharist is the true, but unbloody, memorial.

289. *But does not this justify communion in One kind ?*

—It shows that such a communion is a real and efficacious participation of Christ, and so justifies it in *extreme* cases. Thus the early Church was wont to communicate infants in the species of wine alone, the sweet taste of which induced them to swallow it readily ; while she sent the Communion in the form of bread alone to the confessors in prison at the times of persecution,

when a Priest could not be had to consecrate for them in the prison. But it is very far from justifying it as a *general* use, in the face of the institution of our Saviour, as interpreted by the universal custom of the Church (except in the extreme cases I have mentioned), and the doctrine of the best divines even of the Roman Church, that either species in the Blessed Sacrament has its own special grace.<sup>1</sup>

290. The act passed at Westminster, in December, 1547, for the receiving of the Blessed Sacrament "in both kyndes," and the subsequent Proclamation attached to the "Order of Communion," recognise possible occasions of Communion under one kind, enacting "that the most blessed Sacrament of the Body and Blood of Our Saviour Christ should from thenceforth be commonly delivered and ministered unto all persons within our realm of England and Ireland, and other our dominions, under both kinds, that is to say, of bread and wine (*except necessity otherwise require*)."

291. *Why does he elevate the Blessed Sacrament after either Consecration?*

—For two reasons: first, as presenting the Sacrifice to the Father under the separate forms which represent His Soul and Body parted in

---

<sup>1</sup> See Authorities quoted in Dr. Pusey's *Letter to the Bishop of London*, pp. 162, 163. Third Edition. 1851.

death ; and as showing the Lord's death before the people by this act ; and again, as exhibiting to them Christ really though invisibly present to receive their homage. In this the Priest imitates St. John the Baptist, who was not content with worshipping His Lord, but pointed Him out to the people, saying, " Behold the Lamb of God."

292. Whence the rite was called the " Elevation," or *lifting up*, viewed under the first aspect ; the " Ostension," or *showing*, viewed under the second. Both are met with in the ancient liturgies of the East. Thus the Liturgy of St. James mentions in its very form of Consecration the elevation as done to God, and asserts that Our Lord used this gesture at the first Eucharist : " Taking bread in His holy, spotless, blameless, and immortal hands, looking up to Heaven, *and showing it to Thee, His God and Father*, giving thanks, hallowing, breaking it, He gave it to His disciples, &c." So, in the Liturgy of St. Chrysostom, the Priest, " elevating the Holy Bread, *says, Holy things for holy persons*," and soon after the Deacon takes the chalice reverently, and advances to the door (of the screen), and " elevating the holy Chalice, *shows it to the people*."

293. In the " Order of Communion," 1548, the elevation was forbidden at a *second* Consecration of the Chalice. The First Prayer Book of Edward VI., issued the next year, went further, directing the *main* Consecration to be effected " without any elevation, or showing the Sacrament to the people." Both these orders were apparently directed against the theories of Transubstantiation, and the *local* presence of Christ,—

and so against the *ostension* to the people, not the *elevation* to God. The prohibition was removed in the Second Prayer Book two years and a half later, and has not been since revived. Bishop Wren, among others, was wont to use this symbolical action.

294. Liturgical writers see also in the Elevation a ritual representation of the lifting up of Our Lord on the Cross, and apply to the attractive grace which flows alike from the Passion and from the Eucharist, which is its memorial, that saying of Our Saviour's: "I, if *I be lifted up*, will draw all men unto Me."

295. *Why does the Priest pray in silence after the Consecration?*

—To prepare himself for the reception of the Blessed Sacrament. He continues standing, because his communion is an essential part of the Sacrifice. Mystically these "silent prayers" represent the stillness of the tomb in which our Lord lay after His crucifixion. They also show the reverence due to the Mystical Presence on the Altar. "The Lord is in His holy temple: let all the earth *keep silence* before Him."

296. *Is there not a custom of making a second fraction of the Bread after the Consecration?*

—Yes: the Priest divides one of the halves into which he broke the bread before Consecration, into two unequal parts, the smaller of which he

drops into the chalice. This fraction after the consecration was the only one that occurred in the Liturgies of the Church, till at the last revision of the Prayer Book, in 1662, the Church of England introduced the custom of breaking the bread at the Consecration, thus more closely imitating our Lord's own action than any other liturgy.

297. The "fraction" occurs in every liturgy, but the number of parts varies. The Liturgy of St. James directs a division of the Host into *two*; that of St. Chrysostom into *four*; the Old English liturgies, like that of the West in general, into *three*. The three-fold division is held to symbolise the three divisions of the Church at the time of Our Lord's Resurrection,—the Court of heaven, the spirits in prison to whom Our Lord preached (1 St. Peter iii. 19) in Hades, and the faithful on earth. The placing of the portion in the chalice is explained as symbolical of Our Lord's descent into hell, and also that the Church militant is as it were plunged in the chalice, that is, made to partake of Our Lord's sufferings. Or, as some explain it better, the separate consecration having typified the separation of Our Lord's Body and Soul in the act of death, this commixture is emblematical of their *re-union* at the Resurrection.

298. *Why does the Priest again genuflect before communicating himself?*

—As an acknowledgement of his own unworthiness. He communicates standing, as I have

said, because his communion is an essential part of the Sacrifice (Levit. vi. 26), and *standing* the sacrificial position.

299. *I notice that in communicating the people the Priest begins at the Epistle side; and that, if the Server communicates, he administers to him first of all. Why is this?*

—The people are communicated from *left* to *right*,<sup>1</sup> possibly to show the progress in holiness which these Mysteries should produce: "They will go from strength to strength" (Ps. lxxxiv. 7), as David says in a Psalm which spiritual writers have always applied to the Blessed Sacrament. The Server is communicated first, because he represents the Choir at a Low Celebration; and those in choir, first the clergy and then the lay members, were wont to receive first; afterwards those in the body of the church, first the clergy, and then the laity in order. He also represents the Sacred Ministers (*i. e.* the Deacon and Sub-deacon), who, as actually engaged in the Sacrifice, communicated immediately after the Priest.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, left to right of the Priest as he faces the people in the act of distribution.

300. Anciently the people were communicated in the body of the Church, first the men, who sat on the south, or *Epistle*, side; afterwards the women, on the north, or *Gospel* side.

301. The order as to precedence in communicating the people is of great antiquity, and was probably observed from the first. The communion of the clergy according to their rank is referred to in the 18th Canon of the Council of Nice. In the Eastern Liturgies, the Priest communicates the Deacon (without whom no Celebration takes place) in the Bread immediately after his own reception in that kind; and similarly in the Chalice; afterwards the people in order, the men first, then the women.

302. *Are there any other ceremonies connected with the Communion of the people?*

—Yes: and first, the gestures of the Communicants at the moment of reception. These I will describe in the words of St. Cyril, who wrote in the fourth century: “Approaching therefore, come not with thy wrists extended, or thy fingers open; but make thy left hand as it were a throne for thy right, which is on the eve of receiving the King; and having hollowed thy palm, receive the Body of Christ, saying after It ‘Amen.’ Give heed lest thou lose any of It, for what thou lovest is a loss to thee as from thine own members . . . . Then approach to the Cup of His



Blood, not stretching forth thy hands, but bending, and saying in the way of worship and reverence, 'Amen,' be thou hallowed by partaking also of the Blood of Christ." St. John Damascene alludes to the same custom, but sees in the crossed palms a symbol of Our Lord's Passion. "Placing our palms in the form of a cross, let us receive the Body of the Crucified." The other custom is, to spread a towel or linen cloth over the rails at the Communion of the people. This is done to guard the more effectually against the falling of any portion of the Blessed Sacrament to the ground. Sometimes the Server and some other official of the Church hold this towel before the communicants.

303. In the First Liturgy of Edward VI. the modern Roman custom of communicating the people *in their mouths* was continued, though the antiquity of the present form was recognised. In the second Liturgy the Priest was directed to deliver the Communion to the people "in their hands." The Communion-cloth is still a part of the statutable furniture of Chancels, and was ordered to be used at the Coronation of George IV.

304. *Do not those who are not going to communicate sometimes make an act of Spiritual Communion during the administration of the Sacrament?*

—Yes : in token of their desire to communicate; and in imitation of the woman who touched the hem of Our Lord's garment (St. Matth. ix. 20 ; and xiv. 36). It is done by making *acts* (or short exercises) of faith, hope, and charity, and of ardent desire to receive our Lord, followed by a short invitation to Him to come at least and visit us spiritually, since we cannot now (either through our unworthiness, or from any other cause—as having already communicated at an earlier Celebration) receive Him sacramentally. Its introduction here is a sign that we are one body with those of our brethren who are privileged to approach the Altar ; and serves to remind us that it is only the sins and imperfections of our own hearts which hinder us from a more frequent, or even a *daily*, participation in those heavenly mysteries.

305. *When all have communicated, the Priest covers the chalice and paten with a fair linen cloth. Will you explain this act ?*

—It is in principle the same as the corresponding veiling of the Oblations at the offertory (see Par. 241) ; only it is done with greater solemnity, as being performed to God incarnate

under the sacramental veils. Symbolically, it represents the veiling or hiding of Our Lord's Divinity when He stooped to taste death; or His being wrapped in a linen cloth at His burial.

306. *What is the Post-Communion Prayer?*

—It is a collect said by the Priest after the Communion, begging God to accept our Sacrifice. Such a petition occurs in every Liturgy, sometimes before, sometimes immediately after the Consecration; or as here after the Communion of the people.<sup>1</sup> The Communion of Priest and people having *completed* the Sacrifice, the Church again offers it to the Father for “all the whole Church.”

307. *Will you explain the phrase “all the whole Church”?* *It appears to be a needless repetition, since the “whole” must include “all.”*

—It is an instance of the figure of speech called “Pleonasm,” which employs words in themselves

---

<sup>1</sup> The *second* prayer should never be said, unless the Priest has said the *first* in his “private prayers” after Consecration, the place it occupied in Edward VI.th's First Liturgy, and where Bishop Overall was accustomed to say it; or (which seems allowable) says *both* prayers here. Otherwise the Canon is not complete.

superfluous for the sake of greater emphasis. A similar figure is employed by the Church in the Psalter, in which, on account of His supernal exaltation far above every creature, God is called “the *Most Highest*.” It is here used to show the *universal* application of the Sacrifice, the benefits of which permeate as it were through *the entire* mystical body of Christ. As Bishop Andrewes says, it “is available for present, absent, living, dead; yea, even for them that are yet unborn.” In other words, by this phrase the Sacrifice is pleaded for the threefold divisions of the Church—militant, expectant, and triumphant—the faithful on earth, the Saints Departed, and the dead in general.

308. *Please to explain two things. First, why should we pray for the Saints, who await with certainty the fruition of glory? And if it be lawful to pray for them, how can we ask for them “remission of all their sins”?*

—The most ancient Liturgies offer the Sacrifice on behalf of the Saints, even of the Blessed Virgin—not to obtain for them remission of sins, but increase of glory; and above all, that final consummation of glory, when their souls

shall be re-united to the risen and glorified body. The prayer asks for each division of the Church the benefits suited to its condition: for *us* "remission of all our sins," and whatever else we stand in need of; for *them* the "benefits of Christ's Passion," in so far as it can affect them now, which is by increasing their happiness, and augmenting their joy, and by hastening the accomplishment of the number of God's elect.

309. *Whom should the Priest mention at the pause here?*

—Those whom he wishes to commemorate of the faithful dead; since he has already made mention of the two other classes at the Oblation. (See Par. 246.)

310. *What is the meaning of the phrase "Sacrifice of praise and thanksgiving" in this prayer?*

—It is a translation of the term *Sacrificium laudis*, which occurs in the Roman and Old English Mass, and was applied also to the Jewish Sacrifices (Amos iv. 5; Jer. xxxiii. 11), not as being a Sacrifice of our praise and thanksgiving merely, but a Sacrifice "*offered for a thanksgiving*" (Levit. vii. 12). "It is a Sacri-

fice of praise and thanksgiving," says Thordike, "because it is contained in those kinds" (or elements) "of Bread and Wine, which served for meat and drink offerings in the law of Moses."

311. *Is there any other phrase in this prayer that demands explanation?*

—Yes: the Priest styles the ministry in which he has been engaged "this our bounden duty and service"—*obsequium servitutis meæ*, as the corresponding prayer in the Old English and the Roman Mass words it—a phrase which, like the word MASS (*see* Par. 212), expresses the truth that the Eucharistic Sacrifice is the great act of homage due from man to his Creator; not left to his choice or caprice, but his *bounden duty*.

312. *This I suppose is the reason that the congregation, in churches where ritual has been restored, remain to the end of the Communion service?*

—Yes: the Church has ever required the presence of her children at these Mysteries on each Lord's Day; to which were afterwards added sundry other feasts, thence called *feasts of obligation*.

313. *The Days of Obligation in the present Con-*

tinental Church are, in addition to all Sundays in the year, the feasts of Christmas, the Circumcision, Epiphany, and Ascension of Our Lord, Corpus Christi, St. Peter (June 29), the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin (August 15), and All Saints' Day, with an obligation to *communicate* "at Easter," which Canonists explain to apply to any time between Palm Sunday (or even the beginning of Lent), and the Octave of Easter. In the English Church the *obligation of communicating* is extended to "three times in the year, of which Easter is to be one" (the other two, according to old custom, being Christmas and Whitsuntide). Various local synods from time to time increased the feasts of obligation within their own bounds. It is doubtful whether the Church of England intended her children to regard as "days of obligation" *all* the feasts mentioned as "to be observed" in the Table of Feasts appended to the Calendar. But it is of course a pious custom to assist at the Holy Eucharist, with or without communicating, on these days.

314. *Why is the hymn, "Glory be to God on high," said after the Post-Communion?*

—Probably in imitation of our Lord and His Apostles, who after the first Eucharist "sang an hymn."<sup>1</sup> In the Eastern Church this hymn

---

<sup>1</sup> St. Matth. xxvi. 30; St. Mark xiv. 26. The marginal reading is "psalm," and it ought to be added that there is a tradition (endorsed by Bishop Jer. Taylor: *Life of Christ*, p. iii. sec. 15), that Our Lord and His Apostles sang the "greater Hallel," consisting of Psalm 113-118. These four Psalms are still sung by the Jews at their annual festivals, and especially after the Passover and at the Feast of Tabernacles.

is sung at Matins; in the West, at an earlier stage of the Mass, before the Collect, Epistle, and Gospel for the day. It continued to hold this position in the first Liturgy of Edward VI. In its original position ritualists saw in it a representation of the Birth of Christ, as in the Introit of His Advent. In its present place it may show forth our joy at the Resurrection, which is represented by this part of the Service.

315. It was formerly omitted on those penitential seasons when the Te Deum was not said (*see* Par. 164), on account of its joyful character; whence a custom obtains in some Churches of *saying* it plain at those times (*i. e.* without music), even in Choral Celebrations.

316. *Why is the Priest directed to "let the people depart." with the final blessing?*

—Formerly in this place the Deacon, turning towards the people, chanted aloud: "Ite, Missa est," "Go, the Liturgy is over;" the people, however, remaining for the Priest's benediction, which followed soon after; and, if possible, not departing till the Priest had returned into the vestry. The Benediction consists of two parts—the *Pax Domini* or "Peace of our Lord," and the Benediction proper.

317. *What do these represent?*



—They serve to remind us of the apparitions of our Lord after His resurrection, when He said to His disciples: “Peace be unto you;” and His “lifting up His hands, and blessing them,” as He was taken up from them into Heaven. Thus pious writers have seen in the Eucharistic celebration a mystical representation of our Lord’s Life and Sacrifice,<sup>1</sup> from the first moment of His Conception until His Ascension into Heaven, and His Session at the Right Hand of God, where He offers, by way of pleading and presentation, that Sacrifice, of which the Eucharist is the counterpart on earth.

317\*. The Pax and Blessing are given not from the centre of the Altar, but slightly towards the Gospel side, so that the Priest, in turning towards the people, should not have his back towards the Blessed Sacrament.

318. *Does the Blessing finish the Service?*

No: the consumption of what remains of the Holy Sacrament, and the Ablutions follow.

319. Formerly the Blessed Sacrament was *reserved*, both as being the “perpetual Presence,” answering to the Jewish Shekinah (2 Chron. vii. 1); and in order to

---

<sup>1</sup> So Brevint: “The Holy Communion is a *Sacramental Passion*,” or, as St. Paul says (1 Cor. xi. 26), a “*showing the Lord’s Death*.”

communicate the sick, and, if occasion required, others, out of Celebration time ; and the Ablutions took place immediately after the Communion of the people. This order was preserved in Edward VI.th's First Prayer Book, and is still perpetuated in the Scotch Liturgy. The consumption, thus precluding *reservation*, was ordered in Edward's Second Liturgy, partly through foreign influence, and partly to take away (real or fancied) abuses, but reservation was allowed by Queen Elizabeth's Latin Prayer Book in Collegiate Churches.

320. *What are the Ablutions ?*

—They are small quantities of wine and water which the Server pours into the Chalice, and which the Priest consumes. Some take two ablutions, the first of wine, the second of wine and water mixed. Others add a third of water only, which was the Old English custom.

321. *Why does the Priest revolve the Chalice while the Server is pouring in the first Ablution ?*

—In order to let the wine absorb any drops that may have adhered to the inside of the Chalice.

322. *How is the second Ablution made ?*

—The Priest sets the Chalice down on the Epistle corner of the Altar, and holds the finger and thumb of each hand in the bowl of the Chalice, while the Server pours first a few drops of wine, and then a larger quantity of water over

his fingers into the Chalice. The Priest having wiped his fingers, then drinks the ablution.

323. *Will you explain these acts ?*

—They are designed to insure the *entire consumption* of the Sacred Species, this being essential to the integrity of the Sacrifice, (compare Exod. xxix. 33);<sup>1</sup> and also to prevent any profane treatment of the Holy Mysteries. Wine is used, because it more readily draws to itself anything that remains of the Sacrament of the Blood; water is afterwards added to neutralize the species of wine, whence a considerable quantity is added. Lastly, the second ablution is poured over the Priest's fingers, in order that, if any fragment or crumb of the Bread of Life adhere to them, it may be consumed when the Priest drinks the ablution. For the same reason, before the first ablution, he carefully consumes what remains on the paten, and wipes it with his thumb over the chalice.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Holy Eucharist corresponds not only to the Jewish Passover, and to the various forms of Sacrifice, but also to the Showbread; hence, as in the case of reservation, the consumption *need* not take place at the actual time of the Celebration.

324. In the Old English rite the Priest, after the last ablution, set the chalice *bowl downwards* on the paten to drain; then going to the Piscina or Epistle corner of the Altar, he again washed his hands as at the Lavabo.

325. *What takes place after the Ablutions?*

—The Priest returns to the midst of the Altar, folds the corporal and other linen; and placing the paten on the chalice, covers all with the silken veil. Then, having bowed before the Altar, he returns to the vestry, preceded by the Server, who, having assisted him to unvest, re-enters the chancel, extinguishes the Altar lights, and brings the cruets, etc., from the Credence-table.

326. *Does the Priest always take the Ablutions?*

—If he is going to celebrate again that morning, he does not; but putting them into some fitting vessel, he reserves them till the end of the second service, when he partakes of both together.

327. *Why is this?*

—In order that he should not break his fast.

328. *Why ought we to communicate fasting?*

—From motives of reverence. So Bishop Taylor

says: "To him that would honour the Sacrament of Christ's Body and Blood, let It be the *first* Food he eats, the *first* Beverage he drinks."<sup>1</sup> It is a custom of such antiquity and of so universal observance, that St. Chrysostom, when accused of having administered the Eucharist to those who had broken their fast, said: "If I have done such a thing, may my name be blotted out from the roll of Bishops!"

329. Fasting Communion was always observed in the Church of England from the earliest times. It is enforced by many Canons, among others, the 36th Canon of King Edgar, A.D. 960.

330. *Nevertheless, did not our Lord institute the Holy Eucharist "after Supper"?*

—He did so, and some hold that the custom continued till St. Paul, in consequence of the sacrilegious abuses that obtained in the Corinthian Church, commanded early (and fasting) Celebrations, amongst other things which he "set in order" when he came (1 Cor. xi. 18-34); a belief that the *antiquity* and *universality* of the practice certainly favour. Besides which,

---

<sup>1</sup> So Bishop Sparrow ("Rationale," Oxford ed. p. 216):—"This Sacrament is to be received fasting."

the original institution of the Eucharist was an altogether *exceptional* case; for in it, as Bishop Taylor notes, our Lord made use of the supper *that was wont to follow the Paschal celebration*, to consecrate it to an excellent mystery.

331. Mystically, the fast before Communion from the previous midnight, may not only symbolise the reverent care with which we should approach the Altar, but may serve to recall the “new tomb, *wherein was never man yet laid*,” which should be a type of the Christian heart when prepared to receive the Sacramental Body of its Lord.

332. *Can the same clergyman then celebrate twice in the day?*

—In cases of grave necessity, and on Christmas Day (when on account of the solemnity, it is a Catholic custom to sing *three* solemn celebrations:—one at midnight, when Christ was born; one at dawn, in honour of Him who that day rose the “Day spring from on high;” and one at the usual hour). Otherwise, the same Priest should not celebrate more than once. The Excerpts of St. Egbert assign the symbolic reason of this rule, as of the corresponding one, which forbids reception more

than once in the same day :<sup>1</sup> “ Because Christ suffered but *once*, and redeemed the whole world.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Except of course in the case of a Priest saying a second Mass ; for his reception is essential to the Sacrifice.

## SECTION X.

### HIGH OR SOLEMN CELEBRATION.

333. High Celebration is merely a solemn offering of the Eucharistic Sacrifice with the *full* adjuncts of ritual and music. Ceremonies not described in this Section will therefore be found in the preceding. (Pages 79 to 146.)

334. For an Explanation of the Vestments of the Celebrant and his assistants, and of the Choir, see Section iii. (pp. 14 to 27), especially paragraphs 46-62.

335. *What is the Introit?*

—One or more verses (mostly from the Psalms), sung at the entrance (*ad introitum*) of the clergy into the Sanctuary. It consists of two parts—the *Antiphon* or *Anthem*, and the *Psalm*. Sometimes (but improperly) a Hymn is sung in place of the Introit.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> A hymn frequently *precedes* the Introit, which should commence as the clergy, having paused in silent prayer before the entrance to the Sanctuary, rise to go up to the Altar.



336. *Why is the Introit sung?*

—As an act of preparation for the Service which follows. So the Psalmist advises: “Let us come before His presence with thanksgiving, and show ourselves glad in Him *with Psalms.*” (Ps. xciv. 2.)

337. The Introit, like the Collect, Epistle and Gospel, varies with the season. The *Antiphon* is sung in one of the fourteen modes entire before and after the *Psalm*, which follows to the corresponding Tone. The “*Gloria Patri*” is always added, except in funeral Celebrations, and from the fifth Sunday in Lent till Easter. According to Old English use, the Antiphon is repeated *thrice* on Sundays and Festivals which have rulers of the Choir; at the beginning, and before and after the Gloria of the Psalm.

338. *The clergy having silently prayed at the entrance of the Sanctuary, ascend the steps of the Altar, the Deacon to the right of the Priest, the Subdeacon to his left; the Deacon then receives the censer from the Thurifer, and presents it to the Priest, who incenses the Altar in the midst and on each side. Then the Deacon censures the Priest. Please to explain these ceremonies.*

—The Deacon ascends to the Priest’s right, because he is to minister to him; the Subdeacon, as the inferior minister, to his left. The

custom of using incense at the Eucharist is of very ancient date. It is mentioned in all the oldest Liturgies. The Jews were accustomed to accompany their sacrifices with offerings of incense. Thus Moses says concerning Levi (Deut. xxxiii. 10): "They shall put incense before Thee, and whole burnt sacrifice upon Thine Altar." So again Abijah (2 Chron. xiii. 11): "The priests . . . the sons of Aaron . . .



burn unto the Lord every morning and every evening burnt sacrifices and sweet incense." And David prays (Ps. cxli. 2): "Let my prayer be set forth before Thee as the incense, and the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice." And Malachi, the last of the Prophets, foretelling the days of the Gentile Church, says (ch. i. 11): "In every place incense shall be offered unto my Name, and a Pure Offering." Its use in the *beginning* of the service is also of very ancient date. It is probably here introduced to show that the Church is now beginning her great act of intercession (of which incense is the type; see Rev. iii. 5).<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Incense is not used in funeral celebrations here or at the Gospel, but at the Oblation (and Consecration) only:

339. For an explanation of the incensing of the **Altar** and of the Celebrant, see Paragraph 172.

340. *Why does the Deacon hand the censer to the Celebrant?*

—Because it is his special place to minister to the Priest.

341. *I observe that the musical notation to the Kyrie, or response to the Commandments, very frequently varies at the fourth, and again at the seventh response. Can you assign a reason?*

—Formerly the *Kyrie Eleison*, or “Lord have mercy upon us,” was repeated *thrice* to God the Father,—“*Lord*, have mercy;” *thrice* to God the Son,—“*Christ*, have mercy;” and *thrice* to God the Holy Ghost,—“*Lord*, have mercy.” A separate musical rendering was assigned to each set of *Kyries*.<sup>1</sup> Its use now may serve to

---

because the introductory or *didactic* part of the Mass is inapplicable to the departed.

<sup>1</sup> It is singular that in the Mechlin Office Books noted, the third set of *Kyries* are sometimes directed to be said *twice*, and a fresh notation is given for the *last* *Kyrie*: thus, like the Litany, having addressed each Person separately, offering the last petition to the Holy Trinity—a symbolic arrangement still more clearly marked in our *tenth* *Kyrie*.

remind us that in thought, word, and deed we sin against each Person of the Blessed Trinity, and so should cry aloud for mercy and pardon. (See Par. 219.)

342. *Why do the Deacon and Subdeacon, and the other ministers, stand during most of the Service?*

—Because they are more directly engaged in offering the sacrifice with the Priest.

342\*. It was a very ancient custom in the Church to set aside *kneeling* entirely in the Easter Season, *i.e.* from Easter to Trinity Sunday, as inconsistent with the spiritual joy which should then fill our hearts. It is customary, in some churches, for the Choir to stand throughout the service at this season (except when the Priest kneels or genuflects, when they do the same).

343. The Deacon stands on the step immediately below the platform of the Altar; the Subdeacon on the step below that: the other ministers (*i.e.* the Thurifer and Acolytes) on the floor of the Sanctuary, to mark the different degrees of dignity in the office of each. At the Creed, and again at the Gloria in Excelsis, when the Priest intones the first few words, the Deacon and Subdeacon stand in a line behind him on their respective steps; and then as the

Choir take up the words, they ascend, the Deacon to the right, the Subdeacon to the left, of the Priest, and stand on the platform of the Altar till the Creed or Gloria is finished. The same is done at the Sanctus. The sacred ministers at these times ascend to the level of the Altar, in token that in these parts Priest and people are joining with one heart and one voice ; they do not ascend till the Priest has intoned the initial clause, in acknowledgment that the pastor should be a pattern to his flock, going before, and leading them in praise and prayer.

344. *Why does the Subdeacon read the Epistle?*

—As the inferior minister, it being reserved to the Deacon to announce the Holy Gospel.

345. The Epistle and Gospel are *sung* to “a modest and distinct song,” in token of the joy with which we should receive the message of God. The Epistle, as the inferior, has the simpler notation, being recited on one note throughout, except an inflexion when an interrogation occurs, and one at the end. The Gospel admits of rather more inflexions. Both these chants are of great antiquity, being derived from the *recitative* of the Greek Drama. The Jews had a solemn chant in their religious offices.

346. It is customary in some places, for the

sake of greater solemnity, for the Choir to sing a Hymn called the *Sequence*, because it follows (*sequitur*) the Epistle.

347. According to Old English use the Sequence was confined to *festivals*, and was not an ordinary Sunday feature, except in Advent and Eastertide. It was always preceded by a short Anthem, called the *Gradual*, to which generally "Alleluia" was added; but in penitential seasons, in place of "Alleluia" several verses, mostly from the Psalms, were added to the Gradual. These were called the *Tract*, from being drawn out (*tractus*) to a mournful cadence. The habit of singing between the Epistle and Gospel is of some antiquity. The Greeks call the Anthem here introduced *Prokeimenon*, or "preceding," because it comes before the Gospel.

348. The "Alleluia" (or the Sequence, if there be one), is finished with a *Pneuma*, for reasons given in paragraph 154.

349. *Why is the Gospel ushered in with the offering of incense?*

—The reading of the Gospel is the principal feature of the introductory part of the Eucharistic service, and has ever been accompanied by marks of particular solemnity. St. Jerome testifies to the use of *lights* at the Gospel, as already mentioned (Par. 174). The Deacon, according to Old English usage, receives the censer from the

Thurifer, and incenses the Altar in the midst, as it were asking that the ministry he is about to perform may ascend as the incense in the sight of God. Then, preceded by the Thurifer with smoking censer, and by the taper-bearers, he goes to the appointed place, and facing the North, sings the Gospel. This triumphal procession of the Deacon signifies the progress of the Gospel of Christ by the ministry of preaching. "Their sound is gone out into all lands, and their words unto the ends of the earth." The *incense* going before, proclaims that the preaching of the glad tidings should be accompanied by the odour of good works; as the Apostle says: "We are unto God a sweet savour of Christ" (2 Cor. ii. 15); the *lights*, that before the Gospel darkness and the powers of darkness are chased away.

350. In some Churches the Deacon does not incense the Altar, but on arriving at the lectern, where he is to read the Gospel, incenses the book thrice, in token that the odour of virtue proceeds from the Gospel, as well as for a mark of respect. When the Gospel is over, he incenses the Priest. See paragraphs 171-173.

351. After the Creed, the Celebrant (if it be Sunday) announces any festival or fasting days

that may happen during the following week, and in Parish Churches reads the banns of marriage. He here also reads the names of those on whose behalf the prayers of the congregation are desired ; and gives notice of confirmations or ordination to be held by the Bishop. These notices are given here rather than at Mattins, because the Church contemplates the presence of *all* her children at the Eucharistic Sacrifice. Then, if he is to preach, he lays aside his upper garment, or chasuble, and preaches either from the pulpit or from the Altar steps in his alb. He removes his chasuble, because the sermon is not *directly* a part of the Sacrifice ; retaining his alb, as well to avoid the unseemliness of changing it in the middle of the Service, as to mark the distinction between the Sermon in the Liturgy—which is as it were a continuation of the Gospel and Creed—and an ordinary Sermon apart from Liturgical services. For the same reason the Deacon or Subdeacon lays aside his dalmatic or tunic, if he is to preach.<sup>1</sup> The Priest lays his chasuble *on the Altar*, because it is the Sacrificial

---

<sup>1</sup> And the Thurifer and Taper-bearers deposit their lights and censer in the vestry.



vestment; the Deacon or Subdeacon place their vestment *on the Sedilia*.

352. The Celebrant, Deacon and Subdeacon sit in the Sedilia, each one in his appointed place, during the Sermon. (*See Par. 27.*) No other clergy, nor any of the inferior ministers, occupy these seats. The acolytes raise the vestments of the Priest and sacred ministers when they sit down, to prevent their being injured.

353. *Why do the Choir sing at the Offertory?*  
—As a mark of joy. So we read in the Book of Chronicles (2 Chr. xxix. 27) : “When the burnt offering began, the song of the Lord began also with the trumpets, and with the instruments ordained by David, King of Israel.”

354. *I suppose it is in the same spirit that the third offering of incense here takes place?*

—Yes; while the Choir is singing the offertory sentences, the Deacon and Subdeacon go to the Epistle side of the Altar, and the Subdeacon, having brought up the sacred vessels from the Credence, they there minister to the Priest; the Deacon, as the higher minister, serving with the

wine, the Subdeacon with the water. The Priest having made the oblation, as described in Paragraph 238, receives the censer from the Deacon, and censens the oblations; then the Deacon censens the Priest, and an acolyte censens the Choir, while the Priest goes to the Epistle corner for the Lavabo.

355. According to the Latin rite, the Priest, after having incensed the oblations, proceeds to incense the Altar Cross, and then the Altar itself, first on the Epistle, and then on the Gospel side. The Deacon, having incensed the Celebrant, goes to incense the Choir, and on his return censens the Subdeacon, and is himself censured by the Thurifer. (For the incensing of the Choir see Paragraph 172.)

356. At the Confession the Deacon and Subdeacon, with the other ministers, *kneel*, unless the Subdeacon says the Confession, in which case the Deacon continues *standing*, as in either case does the Celebrant. Kneeling is the sign of humiliation and contrition, and is therefore the attitude of the minister who says the Confession "in the name of" the people, as also of the people themselves, and therefore of the inferior ministers and Choir. The Celebrant *stands*, because though having need to confess his sins no less than the people, he is here

acting *ministerially*. He bows his head and joins his hands, however, in token that he joins *in spirit*, though by his office debarred from joining in act, in the Confession of his flock.

357. The direction: "Then shall the Priest *stand* up—and pronounce the Absolution," supposes him to have said the Confession in the absence of ministers; in which case he kneels. In practice, however, many celebrants *kneel*, even when the Deacon, or some other minister, says the Confession.

358. It is a Catholic custom to *chant* the Confession on Maundy Thursday, and when the Celebrant is a Bishop; at other times it is monotoned. If a Bishop is present in Choir, or in the Sanctuary, he gives the Absolution from his place; but *not* if he is in the body of the church. The same is observed at the Benediction. The reason of this is, that "the less is blessed of the greater" (Heb. vii. 7). But those in Choir, as *leading* Divine worship, are *on the particular occasion* greater than those of whatever rank in the body of the church; wherefore neither benedictions nor absolutions are given from the latter place. The Chancel, also, represents heaven, from whence the blessing of God is shed on His people.

359. *Why does the Priest chant the Preface, and the sentences that precede it?*

—For the sake of solemnity. This chant, which is more elaborate than that used at the Gospel, is of great antiquity.

360. Towards the end of the Preface, one of the acolytes usually kindles the two tall candles which stand before the Altar, first that on the Gospel side, afterwards that on the Epistle side. This is in honour of the *Sanctus* which is about to commence, and of the Canon, which it ushers in. (See Par. 263.)

361. *What is the "Benedictus"?*

—It is a short Anthem added to the *Sanctus* in solemn celebrations. It is called the *Benedictus* (or more properly, to distinguish it from the song of Zacharias, *Benedictus qui venit*) from the first words of the Latin version. It runs: "Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord. Hosanna in the highest." It is generally sung after the Priest has recited in a low voice the Prayer of Humble Access, and has reference to the *coming* of our Lord, which is about to take place through the Consecration.

362. While it is being sung, the taper-bearers again fetch their candles as at the Gospel, and kneel on the floor of the Sanctuary, opposite the Gospel and Epistle sides of the Altar. Lights are here employed in honour of our Lord's mystic Presence, now about to be vouchsafed. In the East lamps were borne before the bridegroom at weddings (see St. Matth. xxv. 1), and in the Temple service lamps were lit before the Lord (Exod. xl. 25). And our Blessed Lord counsels his disciples to let their loins be girded and their lights burning, and to be like

men that wait for their lord when he will return from the wedding (St. Luke xii. 35, 36).

363. Incense is used at the Consecration for the same reason; and in the spirit of the wise men, who offered to the newborn Saviour "Gold, *frankincense*, and myrrh." (St. Matth. ii. 11.)

364. *Why does the Deacon at the beginning of the Canon ascend to the Priest's left?*

—In case he has to turn over the pages of the book. Shortly before the actual words of consecration, he descends to the right of the Priest, and kneels down till after the Consecration of the Bread. He then rises and removes the pall from the chalice, and then kneels till after the Consecration of the Chalice. The Subdeacon kneels when the Deacon first does, but does not rise till after the second Consecration.

365. *What is the Agnus Dei?*

—It is an Anthem sung by the Choir during the Communion of the Priest; and is a Prayer to our Lord now present on the Altar, "the Lamb as it had been slain" (Rev. v. 6). The Choir sing thrice: "O Lamb of God, that takest away the sins of the world," adding twice: "have mercy upon us," and the third time:

“Grant us Thy peace.”<sup>1</sup> The threefold repetition is considered to have reference to the Holy Trinity, to the God who “sent forth the Lamb the ruler of the earth.” (Isaiah xvi. 1.)<sup>2</sup>

366. It is said that the responsory clauses were originally the same all three times, but that the prayer for peace was added as persecution (and the spirit of division) abounded, in order to crave peace and unity for the Church. It is therefore a fitting occasion to pray for that true “peace” of the Church, which can alone take place when the scattered portions are re-united in one visible unity: when the “multitude of them that believe” shall be once more “of one heart and of one soul,” as at the first. (Acts iv. 32.)

367. Both the *Benedictus* before Consecration, and the *Agnus Dei* after, were continued in Edward VI.th's First Liturgy; and so were among the things afterwards abandoned rather by the “curiosity of the minister and mistakers, than of any other worthy cause.”

<sup>1</sup> In funeral celebrations “Grant them rest” is said twice in place of “Have mercy upon us;” and “Grant them rest eternal” the third time in place of “Grant us thy peace.”

<sup>2</sup> The Vulgate or Latin version of this passage reads: “Send, O Lord, the Lamb the Ruler of the Earth from *Sela* (or the rock) to the wilderness,” and is referred by mystical writers to the sending forth of Our Lord by the Father into the “wilderness” of the world to accomplish our salvation.

368. During the Communion of the people (*see* Par. 299-305), it is customary for the organist to play soft strains of music, both to fill up the pause, and as an act of homage by the exercise of his art, to our Lord. Thus, David played on the harp before King Saul (1 Sam. xvi. 23); and "on all manner of instruments before the Lord," when he brought the ark up to Jerusalem (2 Sam. vi. 5).

369. *Why is the Lord's Prayer sung to a solemn chant, after the Communion of the people?*

—Because it is here employed *festally*, as an act of thanksgiving. The Priest chants the first words, and the Choir take it up, and continue it to the end, as is done in the Creed, Sanctus, and Gloria in Excelsis.

370. At the Ablutions the Deacon and Subdeacon minister to the Priest,—the former with the wine, the latter with the water, as at the Oblations. (*See* Par. 354.)

371. After the Ablutions, and when the Chalice is duly covered with its veil as at the first, the Choir and Ministers return *in order* into the vestry; first the Choir two and two, then the lay clerks, then the clergy in choir, then the ministers, Deacon and Subdeacon, and lastly the

Celebrant. It is usual for the Choir to sing the *Nunc Dimittis* during the passage back into the vestry. The candles are then extinguished by an acolyte, as at a Low Celebration.



## SECTION XI.

### THE OCCASIONAL SERVICES.

372. *Why does the Priest use two Stoles in administering Baptism, the first violet, the second white?*

—As an emblem of the gift of regeneration bestowed therein. For being by nature born in sin, the person baptized is hereby made the child of grace.

373. *Why does he divide the water in the form of a Cross at the words: "Sanctify this water"?*

—Because he here solemnly sets apart the water to its sacramental use. For the same reason the water is let off immediately after the Baptism.

374. A name is given to show that the child is dedicated to the service of Jesus Christ. This is usually the name of one of God's Saints, as St. Chrysostom (Homil. 21, in Genes.) and others remark, in order that the child in after years

may be stirred up to imitate the virtues and sanctity of him whose name he bears.

375. The child is baptized with *trine* (*i.e.* threefold) immersion, or trine affusion, once at the name of each Person of the Blessed Trinity, to show yet more clearly the truth that he is baptized into the faith of the Three-in-One. In *trine immersion*, the child is first immersed with the face towards the north, the second time towards the south, and lastly with his face towards the water, to show that he is translated from the Kingdom of Satan to the Kingdom of Grace.

376. A lighted candle is sometimes given to the child, or to the godfather, as a sign that he must henceforth walk by the light of faith. Formerly he was anointed with *oil*, and then clothed in a white garment called the *chrisom*. Both these customs are of the greatest antiquity, and were continued in Edward VI.th's First Liturgy.

377. Baptism is wont to be "solemnly" administered on the Vigils of Easter and Pentecost. The Gospel is *chanted* as in a Solemn Celebration. The reason is, because these were the two great times for baptizing converts in the Primitive Church.

378. *Why is a person, about whose having*

*been previously baptized there is any doubt, only baptized "conditionally"?*

—Because it is not lawful to confer the Sacrament of Baptism *twice*. The same is the case with Confirmation and Holy Orders. The reason is, that these three Ordinances confer a *lasting mark*, or "character;" and to repeat them is therefore sacrilege.

379. The forms of Ordering of Deacons, and of Priests, and of Consecrating of Bishops, are only successive *stages* in the single rite of "Holy Orders."<sup>1</sup> Thus a Bishop translated to a fresh See, even though that See be an *Archbishopric*, is not *re-consecrated*. Similarly a Roman or Greek Priest conforming to the English Church, receives no fresh ordination. A Dissenting Minister has to be ordained before he can officiate as Deacon or Priest, because he is not in Holy Orders, which require Episcopal laying on of hands.

380. *Why are marriages performed with white vestments?*

—Because Matrimony is a "mystery" (Eph. v. 32) or Sacramental rite, setting forth the spi-

---

<sup>1</sup> This is why the Sacred Ministers at a High Celebration wear the *habits* of a Deacon or a Subdeacon, *even though they may be in Priests' Orders*. Every Priest is also a Deacon, every Bishop is also a Priest; the greater orders contain in them the less.

ritual marriage or unity between Christ and His Church. (See Rev. xix. 7. 8.)

381. *Why is the Office begun in "the body of the church," and afterwards continued before the Altar?*

—Because it consists of two distinct parts—the Betrothal, and the actual Marriage. The latter, as the Sacramental part, is alone performed in the Sanctuary.

382. Formerly the Betrothal and the actual Marriage took place on different occasions.

383. At the "plighting of the troth" the woman has her hand uncovered if she have not been previously married; but covered, if she be a widow. This is done to mark the distinction which from the earliest times the Church has made between *first* and *second* marriages, in order to set forth the *unity* of that which earthly espousals signify—the Marriage of the Lamb.

384. Marriage in the first instance hath been *instituted* by God; second marriages are *permitted* (St. Ambrose).<sup>2</sup> For the same reason formerly the nuptial bene-

---

<sup>1</sup> "Primæ nuptiæ a Domino sunt constitutæ; secundæ vero permissæ. Primæ nuptiæ sub omni benedictione celebrantur: secundæ vero carent omni benedictione."

diction was not given in second marriages, and passages alluding to the union betwixt Christ and His Church were omitted.

385. It is an old custom for the man to place the ring first on the *thumb* of the bride, then her *second* finger, and then on her *third*, at the name of Each Person of the Holy Trinity, "leaving it," as the rubric directs, on her fourth finger at the word Amen; thus signifying by action not less than by word that he was undertaking the duties of the married state "in the Name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." The reason assigned for the fourth finger being appointed as the final resting place of the wedding ring, is singular—"because on that finger there is a certain vein which proceeds to the heart." The *left* hand was appointed probably, because the Virgins espoused to Christ wore the ring of their celestial nuptials on the *right* hand. Ritualists see in the ring a type of the *eternal* union between Christ and His Spouse the Church; and of the consequent indissoluble nature of the marriage tie; and in the gold, of which it is generally composed, a symbol of the pure love which subsists between Them (Eph. v. 25; Cant. ii. 16), and which should find its counterpart in earthly marriages.

386. The Priest was in some places accustomed to entwine the ends of his stole round the joined hands of the man and woman, at the words: "Those whom God hath joined together," in token of the indissoluble union therein effected.

387. At the Celebration which follows (*Missa Sponsalium*), the Bride and Bridegroom kneel at the south side of the church, between the

choir and the Sanctuary; and there is a special introit and sequence, because the Holy Eucharist is specially offered to implore grace and benediction on the newly married couple.

388. In the Latin Prayer Book of Queen Elizabeth (1560), after the last blessing there follows the rubric: "Deinde sequetur communio," with a note: "quod desponsati debeant participes fieri mensæ Domini;" from which it appears that the Church intended a celebration to take place, even if the newly-married, from any cause, declined to communicate.

389. Marriages are forbidden to be solemnized, by precept of the Church, at certain seasons; viz. from Advent to the Octave of the Epiphany;<sup>1</sup> from Septuagesima to the Octave of Easter; and from Rogation Sunday to the Octave of Pentecost. The reason is, because at these times the Church is either calling us to penitential exercises, with which a joyful solemnity would be out of place, or is celebrating one of the three great festivals of our Lord, and so would bid us

---

<sup>1</sup> Custom, however, sanctioned marriages on the *Octave day itself* of the Epiphany, and on Trinity Sunday; in the first case probably on account of the few days that frequently intervened before Septuagesima; in the second, because it is not so much the Octave of Pentecost, as the beginning of a new season.

avoid distraction, in order to “keep a solemn feast unto the Lord.” (Deut. xvi. 15; *see also* Exod. xxiii. 14.)

390. In the Visitation of the Sick, and in hearing Confessions, the Priest wears a surplice—the *ministerial*, as opposed to the *sacrificial* or choral garb—and a stole of *violet* colour, because of the penitential aspect of these ordinances. In administering the Communion of the Sick, however, the Priest wears the Eucharistic vestments, and of the colour of the day.

391. The First Prayer Book of Edward VI. directed the Priest to “anoint” the sick person “upon the forehead or breast, making the sign of the Cross,” if he desired to be anointed. This anointing of the sick is of the greatest antiquity, and indeed is derived from the express command of St. James (ch. v. 14): “Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the Church; and let them pray over him, *anointing him with oil* in the Name of the Lord.”

392. In the Eastern Church the anointing of the sick is called the “Mystery,” or Sacrament, “of the Prayer Oil.” It, together with the Confession to which the sick

man is to be "moved," gives the Sacramental character to the Visitation of the Sick.<sup>1</sup> "If the sick layman," says Archbishop Ælfric, "desire to receive unction, let him then confess, and forgive every grudge, before the unction."

393. The Holy Communion, when administered to the sick man at the point of death, is called the *Viaticum*, *i.e.* the "provision for the way." So important has the Church ever considered "the last Sacrament," that the *Viaticum* was not to be denied to the greatest sinners, if they showed signs of repentance. The 13th Canon of the Council of Nice ordered all men to receive the *Viaticum*. For the same reason, the Church has seen fit to suspend the otherwise universal custom of *communicating fasting* (see Par. 328-331), when the Blessed Sacrament is received by way of *Viaticum*.

394. Formerly in many places the Priest was wont to give the *Viaticum* with a different form: "Receive the *Viaticum* of the Body of our Lord Jesus Christ, and may It preserve thy body and soul," &c. And before Its reception the Priest exhorted the sick man to "wash

---

<sup>1</sup> The homilies mention "Matrimony," "Absolution," "Order," "Confirmation," and "*Visitation of the Sick*" as "Sacraments," though distinguishing them from the "two great Sacraments of the Gospel."



himself with the tears of contrition, that he might be worthy to eat the Bread of Life, even the Sacrament of the Body of Christ, which shall be to thee in this way, in which thou art setting forth, strength and support: so shalt thou go by God's grace, in the strength of this meat, even to the Mount of God."

395. If the sick person be unable to retain the sacred species in his stomach, (in which case of course it would be the grossest profanity to communicate him,) or if a Priest cannot be had in time, the Rubric directs him to make an Act of Spiritual Communion. (See Par. 304.)

396. *Why is mention made of the "Priest and Clerks" at the beginning of the Burial Service?*

—Because it is the Church's intention that, whenever possible, the bodies of her children should be committed to the earth with the solemnity of a choral service.

397. The "young men" mentioned in the Acts (ch. v. 6. 10) as assisting at the burial of Ananias and Sapphira, have been supposed to be an order of inferior ministers in the Apostolic Church—whether Subdeacons or Acolytes—to whom this office was appointed. St. Ignatius, in saluting the different orders and degrees in the Church of Antioch, salutes "τοὺς κοπιῶντας—the labourers," which some interpret the Acolytes; others those who had the care of burying the dead. The

Church has ever included "burying the dead" (*i. e.* assisting at their obsequies) among the "Works of Mercy."

398. The Burial Service consists of three parts: the "Office," consisting of the Anthems and Psalms, with the Lesson; the "Celebration" (*Missa de Requie*); and the "Deposition," or burial proper. The singing of Psalms before a funeral in presence of the corpse is of old institution. "If we are occupied with the funeral solemnities of the departed," says St. Chrysostom, "David is first, last, and midst." Sometimes the *whole Psalter* was so recited; but more ordinarily, the body having been brought into church overnight, a service, called the "Vigils of the Dead," consisting of Evensong, followed by Matins and Lauds, was sung.

399. *Incense* is used at funerals in recognition of the Communion of Saints—the truth, that is, that the departed are not severed from the Church on earth, but that they still hold communion with her, being the objects of her *intercession* (of which incense is the type), and also interceding for her. For the same reason the body is incensed, as also to show our reverence for that which was the temple of the Holy Ghost

(1 Cor. vi. 19); which was illuminated and regenerated in Holy Baptism, was fed on Christ in the Eucharist, and which some day will be raised again, being awakened (as our trust is) to a joyful resurrection.

400. In funeral processions *the Cross* is carried before, to show that, as the deceased was signed with the Cross in Baptism, in token that he should not be ashamed to confess the faith of Christ crucified, and to fight under His banner, so he has departed in the same faith. For a similar reason the sacred sign is also marked on the funeral pall.

401. *The tapers* used in funeral solemnities signify, that "the souls of the departed are not put out, but having walked here as children of light, are now gone to walk before God in the light of the living." They tell of *immortality*, and of the final triumph over the grave, when death shall be swallowed up in victory.

402. It is a vexed question among ritualists as to the proper *colour* to be employed in funeral obsequies. All are agreed that all unnecessary gloominess should be avoided; and that the arrangements should be such as speak of Christian hope, and not of the despair of sorrow as they that have no hope. For this end the pall is

usually of a more cheerful hue than black, generally *violet*, trimmed with *red* (or with white for young unmarried persons); and so we find the Old English use employing a variety of colours for the pall. But in the funeral celebration, when we pray God to "remember not the offences" of the departed, it is usual to employ *black* vestments, remembering that death came into the world by *sin*. Some, however, for the reasons stated above, would employ *violet* even in the Eucharistic vestments.

403. At the funerals of *infants*, that is of children dying under and up to seven years of age, white is employed both in the pall and in the vestments of the clergy, because of those alone we can be *sure* that they sleep in Jesus, and so can rejoice without any admixture of mournful sentiment. "It is CERTAIN by God's word, that children, which are baptized, dying before they commit actual sin, are undoubtedly saved." For the same reason the bell is not tolled, and in many places a separate part of the cemetery or churchyard is reserved for the infants. It is usual to place on such a crown of flowers, "as a sign of the integrity and chastity of their flesh." The processional cross is borne without the staff, as signifying that, though signed with the sign of the Cross, and made partakers of the benefits of Christ's Passion, they were not required to carry their cross after Him.

404. Clergy and Sisters are buried in the habits of their Order, because having entered the ecclesiastical or religious *state*, they will be judged at the last day as ecclesiastics or religious. It is not unusual for Sisters and Virgins espoused to Christ to be buried with white palls, trimmed with black or violet; but white vestments are not used by the officiants, because, though

their state is one of purity and integrity, they stand in need of the prayers and suffrages of the faithful, since in many things we offend all.

405. In the "Churching of Women" the Priest uses a *white* stole, because it is a Service of thanksgiving. For the same reason is the "decent apparel" of the woman—that is, according to Catholic custom—a white veil. The service begins at the church door, or at least without the choir, and the Priest leads the woman into the chancel—either by the right hand, or by giving her the extremity of his stole—after the Psalm, because child-bearing is a type of sin (Gen. iii. 16), and this Service is designed to show, that the curse pronounced upon Eve has been done away by the grace of Christ, who has instituted Matrimony "for the procreation of children to be brought up in the fear and admonition of the Lord, and to the praise of His Holy Name."

406. The woman maketh her accustomed offering in token of thanksgiving, according to the commandment of the Lord: "Thou shalt not appear before the Lord *empty*: every man shall give as he is able, according to the blessing of the Lord thy God, which He hath given thee." (Deut. xvi. 16.)

## SECTION XII.

### CEREMONIES PECULIAR TO CERTAIN SEASONS.

407. *Why does the Christian year begin with the first Vespers of Advent Sunday?*

—Because the Church “does not number her days or measure her seasons so much by the motion of the sun, as by the course of her Saviour; beginning and pursuing her year with Him, Who, being the true ‘Sun of Righteousness,’ began as at this time to rise upon the world, and as the ‘Day-Star’ on high, to enlighten them that sit in spiritual darkness.”

408. For the same reason the Church begins her Commemorations of the Saints with the Feast of St. Andrew (November 30), he being the first Apostle who received our Lord’s call—whence the Greeks style him the *Protoclete*, or “first called;” and Advent Sunday is always the Sunday nearest to this festival, whether before or after, or on the day itself.

409. Advent Sunday, as the head of the sacred season of preparation for the Christmas festival, is reckoned as a Sunday of the first or highest class, and always super-

sedes any festival that may fall on the same day. The other Sundays in Advent are of the second class, and take precedence of all but the highest feasts, because the Church is unwilling to turn from the contemplation of our Lord's approaching Advent in the flesh, which she is about to celebrate at Christmas, and of His second coming to which she looks, except for grave cause. For the same reason the week days in Advent are "Greater Ferias," and take precedence of *simple* feasts.

410. Exactly the same rule holds good with regard to *Lent*. The first Sunday (on which the season formerly began) is reckoned as a Sunday of the first class, for the same cause as Advent Sunday is; the three following Sundays are of the second class, the week days "Greater Ferias." The two last Sundays, as appertaining to *Pas-siontide*, are also of the first class; the week days greater Ferias, except the three days before Easter, which are "Double" Solemnities of the first class, though, from their peculiar character, lacking first Vespers. *Ash Wednesday* is a "Greater Feria," but on account of its solemnity as the "head of the fast," takes precedence of all but the highest feasts. Septuagesima and the two following Sundays (which form a kind of preparation for Lent) are of the second rank.

411. In Advent and Lent the Deacon and Subdeacon lay aside the dalmatic and tunic, as being a *festal* garment, and minister in the *planeta*, or folded chasuble, or in their albs.

412. The *planeta*, or planet (so called because from being folded back it presented the appearance of a star when partially eclipsed), is reckoned a penitential vest-

ment, for which reason the Subdeacon removes it, when he is about to sing the Epistle, and the Deacon does the same when he sings the Gospel. The Subdeacon, however, resumes it immediately after the Epistle, but the Deacon ministers in the alb till the Post-Communion, when he resumes the planet.

413. The Deacon and Subdeacon resume the dalmatic and tunic on Christmas Eve, if it fall on Sunday (and in the Latin rite, though not according to Old English use, on the third Sunday in Advent, and the fourth Sunday in Lent also). The reason assigned is, that Advent is a time partly of sorrow and partly of joy, and in the Lessons for the third Sunday the joyous element predominates (as it does also in the Epistle for the fourth Sunday). On the fourth Sunday in Lent the Church makes a kind of pause in her penitential exercises (whence it was called *Refreshment Sunday*), saying as it were with the Psalmist: "Though I walk in the midst of trouble, yet shalt Thou refresh me." (Ps. cxxxviii. 7.) Where this custom obtained, it was usual to employ purple dalmatics richly embroidered in gold, or to use dalmatics of a *rose colour*, yet further to symbolize the temporary change from sorrow to joy. "Thou hast put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness." (Ps. xxx. 12.) "The desert shall rejoice and blossom as the rose: it shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing." (Isa. xxxv. 1. 2.)

414. The dalmatic and tunic are worn on all festivals, when the service is of the festival (*i.e.* when it is not superseded by the Sunday service), both in Advent and Lent; and on Maundy Thursday—*propter solemnitatem cœnæ*—because the Church tempers her sorrowful memorial of our Lord's Passion with an element of gladness on account of the Institution of the Holy Eucharist.



414\*. On the last eight days of Advent, beginning with December 16, the Greater Antiphons are sung at Evensong before and after the *Magnificat*. These Antiphons were formerly called the O's, as each one began with that word. December 16 is marked in the Calendar "O Sapientia," from the first words of the first of these Antiphons: "O Wisdom, which camest forth out of the mouth of the Most High, and reachest from one end to the other, mightily and sweetly ordering all things: come and teach us the way of prudence."

415. *Why is there a Celebration at midnight on Christmas-Day?*

—Because that was the hour in which our Lord was born. It was customary to celebrate *three* High Masses on Christmas Day, the first at midnight, for the reason given above; the second at day-break, in honour of the Day-spring from on high, who on this day dawned upon the world; the third at the usual hour after Matins. The *threefold* celebration also was not without reference to the work of the Blessed Trinity in the Incarnation. (*See* Par. 332.)

416. The Choir children are accustomed to sing Carols during the Christmas season both in church and at the houses of the faithful, in imitation of the angels who at this time sang the first Gloria in Excelsis, when they told the "glad tidings" to the Shepherds at Bethlehem.

417. Special functions were assigned the *boys* attached to the Church at Christmas tide, in honour of the Childhood of our Blessed Lord. Of this kind was the observance of the *Boy Bishop*, which commenced on the feast of St. Nicolas (who is accounted the Patron Saint of children), and ended on that of the Holy Innocents, or Childermas. The Choir elected one of their number, who assumed the episcopal dress during this time, and preached a sermon. In choir, the Boy Bishop sang the service, the children occupying the *upper* stalls, the clergy and lay clerks the lower. In this custom (not without a quaint beauty) our forefathers saw an allusion to the childlike spirit inculcated by our Saviour, when He took a little child, and set him in the midst as a model to His disciples and apostles. The observance has long been obsolete. The custom of constructing a manger or crib in one of the aisles or side chapels is still continued on the Continent. Tapers are burned round it in honour of Him who is the Brightness of the morning, and whose light at this time dawned upon the world.

418. The decoration of churches with evergreens in times of festivity is derived from the Jews, from whom apparently the pagans borrowed it. There is a peculiar fitness in these decorations *at Christmas*, because this festival corresponds with the "feast of tabernacles." (Levit. xxiii. 40.)<sup>1</sup> The evergreens remain

---

<sup>1</sup> There is a tradition that our Lord was born during the feast of Tabernacles.

throughout the Epiphany season (which is the complement of Christmas), unless Candlemas day happen before Septuagesima, in which case they are removed prior to the Vigil.<sup>1</sup>

419. *Why are Candles distributed on the Purification of the Blessed Virgin?*

—In allusion to the words of Symeon at the Presentation of our Saviour in the Temple, “To be a *light* to lighten the Gentiles.” Hence the popular term “Candlemas day.”

420. Ashes were formerly distributed on Ash Wednesday, and branches of palm on the Sunday before Easter—the former in sign of penitence, the latter in commemoration of the triumphal entry of our Lord into Jerusalem, when the people cut down branches of palm, and strewed them in the way. (St. John xii. 12.) The hymn: “Glory, and laud, and honour,” is sung by seven boys, in allusion to the Hebrew children, who cried Hosanna.

421. The six psalms appointed for Ash Wednesday at Matins and Evensong, with that sung in the Communion service, form the “Seven Penitential Psalms,”

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Easter decorations* remain from Easter till the morrow of the first Sunday after Trinity, or rather till the following Thursday (the Octave of Corpus Christi); thus including the whole of the Paschal season, the Whitsun and Trinity Octaves, and the Octave commemorating our Lord's mystical presence in the Eucharist.

which were frequently recited during Lent from very early times. This day, however, retains the ferial lessons and hymns, because it ranks only as a ferial day, though of the highest class; and for the reasons assigned in the ensuing paragraph.

422. The proper hymns for Lent do not begin till the first Vespers of the Sunday, because the previous days are merely supplemental, having been added in order to complete the number of *forty days*, without reckoning in the Sundays, which, as weekly memorials of the Resurrection, are not included in the days of *fasting*. The Old English, and some other Service-books, divided Lent into three stages, by the use of a fresh set of hymns at the third as well as the fifth Sunday, in order to show the progression in holiness that should attend our penitential exercises: "They will go from strength to strength." (Ps. lxxxiv. 5-7.) The three divisions of Lent also typified the three night-watches of a beleaguered city, Lent representing the time of sorrow and penance, and so of the earthly exile of the Church, "going through the vale of misery."

423. The word "Alleluia," which signifies "Praise the Lord," and is a joyful song, is also omitted in Lent, or rather from Septuagesima to Easter, a period sometimes called the "greater Lent." This period is supposed to refer to the seventy years' captivity of the Children of Israel, when they hung their harps by the waters of Babylon, saying: "How shall we sing the Lord's song in a strange land?" It was formerly the custom to sing the "Alleluia" many times over in the service just before Septuagesima. This was called the "farewell to Alleluia." The "Alleluiatic Sequence," that is, the hymn beginning: "The strain upraise of joy and praise,

Alleluia," was so employed in Germany, and the hymn : " Alleluia, song of sweetness," in the diocese of Worcester.<sup>1</sup>

424. Before the first Vespers of the fifth Sunday in Lent, when the Church begins to celebrate the Passion of our Lord (whence this Sunday is called *Passion Sunday*, and the week that follows, "Passion Week"),<sup>2</sup> it is customary to *veil* crosses and pictures throughout the church; they remain covered till the celebration of the Easter festival, except a feast occurs. Veiling or covering is a sign of mourning (Isa. xxv. 7); and in some parts of the church the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Church retains the Hebrew words *Alleluia*, *Hosanna*, *Amen*, and the like, rather than their vernacular equivalents, as a sign of her Hebrew origin (Rom. xi. 18), and in token that the law is summed up in the Gospel. So formerly (and still in the Latin Church) the Greek phrases: *Kyrie eleison*, *Christe eleison*, *Agios O Theos*, and the like, were employed—(according to Martene, in early times the Latin *miserere nobis* was similarly used by the Greeks)—as a sign that, whatever be her language, the Church is one. Thus the "Hebrew, Greek, and Latin" (St. John xix. 20) were all employed by the Liturgies of the Church; and tradition asserts, that on the conversion of the Jews the Church will be visibly one under these threefold aspects—the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin Churches.

<sup>2</sup> The whole fortnight is called *Passion-tide* (see Par. 76); and the last week *Holy Week*, or the "Great Week;" though colloquially *this* week has come to be called "Passion Week" in England.

crosses and pictures were accordingly veiled throughout Lent. The spirit of the Passion-tide veiling seems to be, that the Church would draw off our attention from everything but Him whose suffering she is commemorating, bidding us "Consider Him that endured such contradiction of sinners."

425. *Is it not customary to sing the Holy Week Gospels with peculiar ceremonies?*

—It is; and you will observe that they are of great length, so as to form a very marked feature in the services. On Sunday St. Matthew's narrative of the Passion is recited; on Monday and Tuesday that of St. Mark; on Wednesday and Thursday that of St. Luke; and on Friday that of St. John. Whence the Holy Week Gospels were called the "Passions." The customary lights and incense are omitted, except on Palm Sunday; and it is usual, when there are sufficient clergy, for the Passion to be sung by three; one reciting the words of the Evangelist, another those of Christ, and a third those of the Jews and others; or at least for the Deacon to sing these parts with different musical intonations. Another pious custom is for all to kneel down at the words which tell of the death

of our Lord, while a short pause is made for private prayer. And the usual responses: "Glory be to Thee, O Lord," &c., are omitted.

426. The Lenten veil, which hung between the choir and the altar, was suffered to fall at the words: "the veil of the temple was rent in the midst;" and on Good Friday at the words: "they parted my raiment among them," two acolytes removed the two linen cloths which covered the slab of the altar.

427. *Why is the Altar vested in white on Maundy Thursday?*

—With reference to the Institution of the Blessed Sacrament. At Vespers, however, the Altar is stripped, and remains so till the first service of Easter, and during this time the bells are not rung.

428. The three last days of Holy Week have ever been observed with extraordinary solemnity, as covering the hours actually occupied by the Passion of our Lord. Formerly the *Gloria Patri* was omitted at the Psalms, and the choir-service began at once with the Antiphon before the Psalms; and at the Nocturns, or night service, fifteen candles were arranged in a triangular candlestick at the Epistle side of the altar, one of which was extinguished after each of the fourteen Psalms recited in Matins and Lauds; the six candles on the altar being also extinguished at the Benedictus, one at every other verse. Lastly, the fifteenth candle was hidden behind the altar, while the fifty-first Psalm was recited in a low

voice ; after which it was restored to its place at the top of the candlestick. This service was called, from the extinguishing of the lights, the *Tenebræ*, or darkness, and symbolised the darkness which covered the whole earth at the time of our Lord's Crucifixion, and the desolation and abandonment which our Saviour endured in His Passion. The fifteenth candle was not extinguished, but was hidden awhile, and then re-instated, because God did not leave our Lord's Soul in Hell, nor suffer His Holy One to see corruption, but raised Him from the Dead.

429. The Altars were formerly *washed* with wine and water on Maundy Thursday, in memory of the act of St. Mary Magdalene, who washed our Lord's feet, and wiped them with the hair of her head, in preparation for His burial. (St. Matth. xxii. 12.) And it was customary for Bishops and Superiors of religious Houses to wash the feet of twelve or thirteen poor persons. The Kings of England long performed this office, the last who did so being King James II. It was afterwards performed in the Chapel Royal by the Archbishop of York, acting for the Sovereign ; but since 1731 has been suffered to fall into disuse. Doles, however, are still distributed by the Sovereign on this day.

430. *Why is there no Celebration on Good Friday ?*

—The Church has from very early times been wont to stay on this day her Memorial Sacrifice out of veneration to that Bloody Oblation which was then consummated ; as also because the Eucharist must always be more or less of a joy-



ful service, and so seemed out of character on this day of desolation and grief.

431. Formerly the Sacrifice was pleaded to-day as on all other days, but the *Consecration* (as the festal element) was lacking; that is to say, the Sacrifice was offered with the Blessed Sacrament which had been consecrated the day before. This was called the *Mass of the Presanctified*, and was celebrated by the Easterns every day in Lent except Saturday and Sunday, and by the Armenians on Holy Saturday as well. In the absence of reservation, the best ritualists hold that the course most consonant to the mind of the Church, is to say the Ante-Communion Office only on these days, or at least on Good Friday.

432. *Will you explain to me why the Altar in many churches remains stripped on Good Friday?*

—The custom has reference to the stripping off of our Lord's garments at the pillar, and to His hanging naked on the cross. Stripping was also a sign of humiliation; and so just as the Church on festivals puts on her "beautiful garments" (Isa. lii. 1), and makes her clothing of "wrought gold" (Ps. xlv. 14): so on the day of sorrow and abasement she "lays her robe from" her like the King of Nineveh in the great fast (Jonah iii. 6). But if the Altar cannot be conveniently laid bare, or is richly ornamented in

colours, it is usual to cover it with a *black* frontal.

433. *What are the "Reproaches"?*

—A selection of Anthems, sung in the place of the Introit. They are chiefly taken with a few verbal alterations from the prophecy of Micah, intermingled with a very ancient form of the Kyrie Eleison, used in the Greek Church. They set forth "the exceeding ingratitude of His chosen people to our Blessed Lord, and of those who by their sins crucify Him to themselves afresh." Towards the end the hymn: "Sing my tongue the glorious battle," which commemorates the Life and Passion of our Lord, is sung.

434. The Introit must always be more or less of a festal feature. (*See Par. 336.*) During Passion tide the Church, to impart somewhat of a mournful aspect, omits the Gloria, but on this day the whole "Psalm of Entrance" is hushed. For the same reason the "Reproaches" are sung *kneeling*.

435. The "Three Hours' Agony," which is a devotion frequently observed on Good Friday, is not a liturgical service, but arose from the need of an exercise, to enable the faithful to spend the actual hours, during which the Lord of Glory hung on the Cross, in devout meditation and prayer. Such "devotions" are common on the Con-

tinents, and are expressly provided for in Edward VI.th's Acts of Uniformity, provided they do not let or hinder the course of public worship.<sup>1</sup>

Matins having been sung at Matins 9 A.M., at which hour it is believed that the Scourging at the Pillar took place, and the Altar service being concluded about noon, when He was nailed to the Cross, the clergyman who is to conduct the devotion kneels at the faldstool where the Litany is wont to be sung, and begins by the Invocation of the Holy Trinity. The prayers and hymns that follow are intermingled with short sermons, generally on the Seven Words spoken by our Lord from the Cross, and are so arranged as to keep the mind fixed without weariness on the Agony and Death of our Lord, and to conclude at 3 P.M., at which hour our Lord gave up the ghost.

436. *Are there any peculiar observances connected with Easter?*

—It is the custom in some places to place an extra candle on the floor of the Sanctuary, on the Epistle side of the Altar. This is called the *Paschal taper*. It is lighted every day at High Celebration and Evensong till Low Sunday, and thence on Sundays and Festivals till Ascension

---

<sup>1</sup> "Provided also that it shall be lawful for all men, as well in churches, chapels, oratories, or other places, to use openly any psalms or passages, taken out of the Bible, at any due time, not letting or omitting the Service, or any part thereof, mentioned in the said book."—See Burn's Ecclesiastical Law, vol. iii. ch. iv. 9, page 251.

day, when it is removed after the Gospel. It typifies the glory and majesty of our Lord's Resurrection, and the spiritual joy with which we should celebrate it.\* Easter has always been observed with a solemn Octave, both because it is the direct Christian counterpart of the Jewish Passover (Exod. xii. 15. 16), and on account of its dignity as the "queen of feasts." For this reason the first Sunday after Easter is called Low Sunday, as being "a little lower" only than the feast itself. And many ritualists hold that the special Anthems, in place of the *Venite*, (and some say, but with less reason, the proper Psalms,) <sup>1</sup> should be sung every day throughout the Octave. To impress upon us the unity of the feast, though it lasts throughout the week, the Antiphon: "This is *the day* which the Lord has made: we will rejoice and be glad in it," is sung in place of the hymn up to the first evensong of Low Sunday. Another observance is the frequent introduction of the triumphant "Alleluia" during the Easter season.

437. The Church requires all her children to communicate three times in the year, of which Easter, on

---

<sup>1</sup> See Par. 439-444 on the Proper Psalms for feasts.

account of its dignity and its relation to the Passover, is to be one.

438. The special observance of the Monday and Tuesday in Easter and Whitsun weeks would seem to have reference to the work of the Holy Trinity in the Resurrection and Descent of the Holy Ghost. Formerly Wednesday was so observed also (thus preserving the same truth, without counting in the feast-day itself); and perhaps for a similar reason, as well as to commemorate the three classes of Martyrs—those in will and in deed, those in will though not in deed, and those in deed though not in will—the Church so early set apart the *three days* after Christmas as special festivals.

439. *Does not the Church interrupt her monthly course of psalmody on certain feasts?*

—Yes, on the three great festivals, for the sake of greater dignity; and on Ascension day, as the next in rank; on Ash Wednesday, in order to introduce the seven Penitential Psalms, “the seven weapons wherewith to oppose the seven deadly sins;” and on Good Friday, as the solemn memorial of the Death of Christ.

440. On *Christmas day* the 19th Psalm is used with reference to the Birth of our Lord, the true sun of righteousness, who then “came forth as a bridegroom,” wedded to our humanity “out of His Chamber,” the Virgin’s womb, “rejoicing as a giant to run His course” of sorrow and humiliation, to save a ruined world; the 45th, as telling of that “girding with the sword,”

namely our flesh, with which he would conquer Satan, and crush his empire over the human race; the 85th, as speaking of "righteousness and peace kissing each other," that is, offended justice being satisfied, and our "peace" being made by the Incarnation and subsequent Oblation of our Lord; the 89th, as foretelling the subduing of Egypt, that is, the Empire of Satan, by the mighty arm of our Incarnate Lord; the 110th, as referring to "the dew of" our Lord's "birth"; and the 132nd, as telling of the habitation "for the mighty God of Jacob," viz. the substance of our flesh.

441. On *Good Friday*, the 22nd Psalm foretells the Passion of Christ; the 40th speaks of the "innumerable troubles" that "came about" Him on the way of sorrows, and the weight of our "sins"—which He made as it were His own—taking "such hold upon" Him, that He was "not able to look up"; the 54th tells of that mighty oblation, that "offering of a free heart"—the great *MISSAH NEDABA*—which our Lord made of Himself on Calvary; the 69th, which is sung in the evening, speaks of that "rebuke" of God which "broke" His "heart," when He cried in bitterness of soul: "My God, my God, why hast Thou forsaken me?" the 88th of those "wonders among the dead," when He went and "preached to the spirits in prison" (1 St. Pet. iii. 19); and then looks forward to Easter morning:—"Shall the Dead rise up again, and praise Thee?"

442. The *Matin Psalms* at *Easter* speak of "the breaking of" the bonds of the rulers "asunder," when our Lord brake through the sealed stone, and passed by the astonished keepers; of the awakening "right early"—even when it was yet dark; of the showing His people the power of His works, when He appeared to

St. Mary Magdalene and to the other disciples. The Evening Psalms recount the resurrection of Christ the "simple" Man, the Sinless One "out of the dust" of death; the driving back of Jordan, a type of the bursting of the Gates of Death: the stone which the builders refused, viz., Him whom the rulers of the Jews rejected, becoming the headstone in the corner.

443. On *Ascension day* the Church tells in her Psalmody of the "glory" of Christ being "set above the heavens"; and of His being crowned with glory and worship "at the right hand of God"; of His "dwelling" in the "tabernacle of God" even in the heaven of heavens, the "holy hill" of God; of God's setting "a crown of pure gold" upon His Head; of the "King of Glory" entering, in triumphal majesty, through "the everlasting doors" of heaven; of His "going up" into heaven "with a merry noise," and there reigning "the King of all the earth"; and of His "setting up" Himself "above the Heavens," and His "glory above all the earth"; that His "beloved"—that is, His disciples—for whom He tasted death, "may be delivered."

444. On *Whitsunday*, the 48th Psalm tells of the Apostles waiting for "the loving kindness" of God, even the promised gift of the Comforter, "in the midst of" Jerusalem, in the Upper Chamber, which had been the scene of the first Eucharist; the 68th, of the "gracious rain," the Spirit of God, which He sent upon His "inheritance," the Church; the 104th, of the "Breath" or Spirit of God, which He this day sent forth to "renew the face of the earth"; and the 145th, of that "declaring of the power" of God, when every one heard in his own tongue the wonderful works of God, and the

"memorial of His abundant kindness" was showed, by the adding to the Church of three thousand souls.

445. *Why is the Anniversary of the Consecration of a Church kept with so much solemnity?*

—Because we should thank God for all the benefits we and others derive from the services and the means of grace dispensed there; and as a type of the final triumph of the Church of Christ—the "great congregation" of those whom "no man can number"—to which the hymns and Introit specially refer us.

446. All Saints' Day is similarly observed with solemnity, as a commemoration and anticipation of the final glory of all God's Elect, when "the Marriage of the Lamb" shall come, and "His Bride," the Church, having "made herself ready," shall be "arrayed in fine linen, clean and white, for the fine linen is the righteousness of Saints." (Rev. xix. 7, 8.)

447. But since the triumph is not yet come, and because sin and weakness delay its approach, the Church was wont to observe the morrow of All Saints' Day, as the commemoration of *All the Souls* of her children departed, praying that God would speedily accomplish the number of His Elect, and would give to the souls of the



departed rest and peace, "not remembering our offences, nor the offences of our forefathers." Whence there were two Evensongs on All Saints' day, the second Vespers of All Saints being followed by the Vespers of the Dead. Churches are dedicated in honour of "All Souls," in token that they "are in the hand of God," and having "died in the Lord," are "blessed," even though they were not such bright and burning lamps in the Church of God as to have deserved to be enrolled in her catalogue of eminent Saints. For the same reason it was the custom for the faithful to deck the graves of their friends and relations with flowers on this day. Though the public commemoration of All Souls' Day is not now insisted on by the Church of England, the day has ever been marked in the Kalendars—which till 1832 were a monopoly of the Stationers' Company, and received as such the sanction of the Archbishop of Canterbury;<sup>1</sup> and in every "Primer" or Manual of private devotion issued by authority, except the second of King Edward VI., issued in 1553, the *Dirge*, or Service for the Departed (so called from the first word of the initial Antiphon in Latin—*Dirige*, "Direct Thou"), has found a place; a sufficient indication of the mind of the Church, that at Hallowtide we should remember *both* classes of the Departed. (*See Par. 245-247.*)

448. All Saints' Day is the *last* of the Church's greater commemorations of her de-

---

<sup>1</sup> The other days were: March 17, *St. Patrick*; Thursday after Trinity Sunday, *Corpus Christi*; July 7, *Translation of St. Thomas of Canterbury*; August 15, *Assumption of the Blessed Virgin*. But the different editions of the Primer add others, and Queen Elizabeth's Latin Prayer Book has a Saint for nearly every day in the year.

parted worthies, because it sums them all up in one, and because the final triumph of the Saints, and the marriage of the Lamb shall be at the *end* of time ; just as Trinity Sunday is the last of her sacred seasons, because the Beatific Vision is the eternal *end* of the Church Triumphant, when time shall be no more.

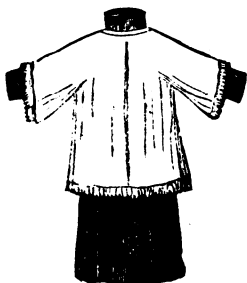
## APPENDIX.

---

### SECTION XIII.

#### THE COTTA, ROCHET, AND BIRETTA.

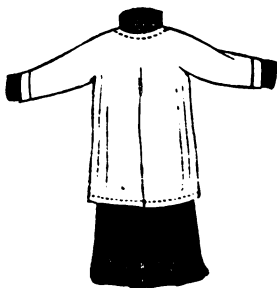
449. It remains to notice two varieties of the Surplice, which are not uncommonly to be met with.



The *Cotta* is somewhat shorter than the Surplice, and not quite so full, and is either entirely wanting in sleeves, or (which is more correct) has short ones reaching to a little below the elbows. The bottom of the *Cotta* and the ends of the sleeves are frequently edged with lace, an ornamentation which corresponds with the "Apparels" of the Alb.

450. The *Rochet* is a short Surplice (generally made of lawn, or fine linen) with tight sleeves, resembling those of the Alb. Both these varieties of the Surplice have resulted from the inconvenience of the wide

pendant sleeves of the *Surplice proper* in certain functions, such as the administration of Baptism, when the sleeves were apt to get wetted, and in serving at the Holy Eucharist at times when the Alb would be out of place.



451. The *Rochet* is also an Episcopal vestment.

452. What is the "*Biretta*"?

—A square cap of black silk or other stuff, worn by persons in Holy Orders at processions and other outdoor functions.



453. The *Biretta* is the non-episcopal form of the *Mitre*, and both signify the helmet of salvation and the glory of the Priesthood. The *Mitre* is cloven in the midst, like the "tongues of fire" which fell upon the Apostles (Acts ii. 3), to show that the wearer is a successor of the Apostles, and shares with them in the Pentecostal gift. It is a question whether the use of the *Mitre* is of extreme antiquity. Some even assign its introduction to the 10th century. But Bona (*Rer. Lit.* lib. i. c. xxiv.), while admitting the possibility



of the fact, shows that *some* ornament of the head was worn from the earliest ages. The reader will remember that under the Old Law a "Mitre" (or turban) of fine linen was appointed for the High Priest (Exod. xxviii. 4), and "Bonnets" for the Priests and Levites (verse 41). The Fathers mention that St. James the Just, first Bishop of Jerusalem, and also the Apostle St. John, were in the habit of wearing the golden plate, which was prescribed for the Mitre of the High Priest in the Jewish Ritual.



In the Eastern Church the actual Mitre is unknown, but the clergy wear a particular kind of Cap, over which they arrange the Hood.

454. Both the Episcopal Mitre and the Biretta are frequently worn in Church. The universality of the practice shows that the injunction of St. Paul (1 Cor. xi. 4) either referred *alone* to the particular acts of "praying" and "prophesying," or were mainly directed against the uncomeliness of a woman entering the assembly of the faithful with uncovered head (verse 15). The Bishop wears the Mitre in the acts of Confirmation and conferring Orders, but lays it aside when engaged in prayer; the Biretta is worn on entering and leaving church, and in some parts of the church during the singing of the Psalms. Members of Religious Orders use the *Hood* of their habit (sometimes but improperly called the *Cowl*) in place of the Biretta.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The cowl is a loose vestment, worn over the *frack*, in

NOTE A. (*Referred to at p. 115.*)

455. The following valuable remarks on attention to minute details in ritual are from a paper read at York during the Congress by the Rev. E. A. Hillyard, Rector of St. Laurence's, Norwich :—

“Another objection occurs to the minds of many, who are themselves favourers of Ritualism up to a certain point. Those, I mean, who are wont to admire the comeliness and decency of the general features of a ceremonial service, but express themselves offended at the apparent attention to minute detail. Granted, say they, that our services are too cold and repellent, and that you have made them hearty and attractive, but why this continual bowing and scraping, these genuflexions and crossings, this constant attention to such very small acts? These surely are trivialities, puerilities, of themselves unedifying, beneath the dignity of a priest, his place, and the object of our worship. In short, let us, they say, have choral services, but no tomfoolery. Taking away the terms containing more of abuse than argument, the objection is intelligible, but it may be said that analogy (which has been allowed in the hands of Christian apologists to play a large part in the defence of truth) does not lead us to this same contempt of minutiae which our opponents exhibit. Things, to us small and apparently trivial, have their place in Creation—an office however,

---

the winter season and during the night office. The other parts of the monastic or religious habit are: the *scapular*, a narrow strip of serge or other stuff covering the shoulders and hanging before and behind down to between the knee and the hem of the frock; and the *girdle* or *rope*, which is generally ornamented with three knots, signifying the three vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience; and (in some Orders) the *sandals*.

obscure to us, which they fulfil—a meaning and an importance in their minute lives, though scarcely if at all subservient to man, his uses, and his wants. Nay, further, their very uselessness to us, tells of Another Whose praise or wisdom they display; that whereas we refer all things to ourselves as centre, and condemn or approve according as we are pleased or displeased, like the fly on the cartwheel, nevertheless we ourselves are only insignificant parts of a great whole, owing our importance only to the nearness of our relations to God. Moreover, it may be said, God is of such a nature, that as He could be mastered by nothing however great, so He can overlook nothing however small. Thus if these minute acts relate to God, they tend to Godliness as acts of homage, whose smallness is to be taken as no signs of worthlessness, but as indications of reverence and recollectedness marked and approved by the All-Seeing Eye quite as much as the general scope of man's service, or the tendency of his greater religious acts. We, on the other hand, might reply to the objectors of Ritual minuteness—‘If you could frame a world, consistently with the principles on which you would prescribe rubrics, you would necessarily have everything in large type. No animal would be smaller than a megatherium, every fish very like a whale, every flower at least equal in size to a sunflower, every sound a shout: nothing in creation would be less useful than an ox or an ass; nothing more beautiful than your own ugly theories, from which all beauty is banished, or more pleasing to the eye than the sober admixture of black and white. You, in fact, would have framed a Brobdignag world in half-mourning, but God has not.’ Ritualism, if we may reverently say so, follows the order of nature, for it is the calling forth from the chaotic, disordered acts of man, a *κοσμος* containing living forms of praise and wor-

ship, analogous to things of earth, air, sea, and sky. The despised and ridiculed minutiae of worship tend in the limit to Godliness just as the myriad hosts of insect life, as they flit in the sunbeam, are factors however small in the great product of nature's praise; and reverential care about trifles is a mystic counterpart in the kingdom of grace, to the microscopic wonders in the sister kingdom of nature. If it should be answered that this spirit of attention to detail, however consonant with natural religion or even the earlier stages of revealed religion, is repugnant to Gospel liberty—and at any rate more akin to a spirit of Pharisaical exactness than to true holiness—such persons should be reminded of the extreme minuteness observable in the Gospels in the accidents of our Lord's typical obedience, His sacramental acts, and also in what may be called the Ritual of that penitence which is the threshold of Godliness.

“ Our Lord's human mind gave minute attention to the fulfilment of every detail of prophecy, as well as of all righteousness; neither does it seem necessary that He should care for crumbs; that the colt on which He sat should be unbroken, whereon never man sat, or that His tomb should be like the manger at Bethlehem, that wherein never man had been laid. He even seems at Emmaus to have imposed on Himself the same Divine law of Eucharistic form, which He observed after the last Passover—the lifting up of the eyes, the fraction of the bread, by its identity of ceremony, with that they had so lately seen, made the disciples recognise Him. Thus He opened the understandings of the disciples, whose hearts had only burnt at His words, by His significant but minute signs. In like manner it was by external and minute acts, a Ritual of Healing typical throughout, that he chose to act on the deaf and dumb man. The spitting on the ground, the touching the



tongue, the upward look so often recorded, the sigh—all preceded that word, which of itself alone was sufficient to perform His will, even to the creation of a world. The cases of the apparently unnecessary touching of lepers are also obvious examples of some law of His own, by which the lightest touch of His garment wrought effectually on the bodies of men. Nor can we limit this law by confining it altogether to His Sacred Person; blessings inferior in kind are conveyed under the old law by similar imposition of hands; handkerchiefs from the bodies of Apostles work miracles in the new, their hands convey the Holy Ghost, while their successors now claim the grace of their Apostolic predecessors, and exercise it (even if they doubt their power) in our rites of confirmation and ordination. I see the same honour conferred on things small and mean, whether in the repeated preference in the younger and weaker in the Old Testament, or in the choice of agents of no reputation in the New—whether of lowly-born attendants and followers, for His earthly life, or in the appointment of the mean things, water, bread, wine for the visible signs of His inward graces and presence. Again, when spiritual life is concerned, not only have we the condemnation of him that despiseth small things, but the highest value placed on the childlike mind, the necessity of stooping if we would enter the narrow portal of His kingdom, in which the sighing of a contrite heart is acceptable, the standing afar off noted, the downcast look recorded, the smiting on the breast unreprieved, penitential tears allowed to touch Him, woman's glory and pride (her beautiful hair) accepted, instead of meaner things, to wipe His sacred feet, and all without a hint that the simplicity of faith and love required none of these things. In short, minuteness seems no valid objection to rites in a church where beginnings are

described as resembling in minuteness and insignificance the mustard seed and the leaven. We might rather say that if all rule, and all dominion, and even Christ's kingdom were to be laid down, that God may be all in all in Heaven, shall not this universal dominion of God be asserted on earth even now in the order of eyes, hands, posture, gesture, and liturgical acts of those His servants who stand before that altar which is to them in a mystery His throne, and therefore the most fitting place for the most complete and careful worship? And shall not that conduce to Godliness which turns our bodily members into instruments of holiness, gives up the waywardness and thoughtlessness of will, and offers with care insignificant acts of body to perfect, as far as may be, that oblation of ourselves, our souls and bodies, made in our most solemn office? Only, then, could such acts of minuteness be misplaced, if offered to one of finite capacities or limited powers of apprehension; but as He has revealed Himself as the Infinite One, there is no reason why the gamut of worship should not be as boundless as His attributes, and contain every note from man's smallest acts up to the highest of the unceasing worship of the heavenly host."

---

**"He shall reverence my Sanctuary."**





# INDEX.

---

*The figures refer to paragraphs, not to pages. Ceremonies alluded to in the work, which are now obsolete, are marked with an asterisk.*

---

## A.

Ablutions, 320-329.

Absolution, 253-255.

———— (Sacramental), why ministered in violet stole, 390.

Abstinence and fasting, distinction between, 86, 87.

———— why Friday set apart as a day of, 88.

Access, prayer of humble, 267.

———— why communicants only mentioned in, 268.

\* "Accumulation," what, 143.

Acolytes, why boys serve as, 211.

Address, prayer of. *See* "Prayer of humble Access."

Adoration (Eucharistical), 285.

———— Bp. Andrews on, 285.

———— Forbes on, 285.

———— Jeremy Taylor on, 285.

———— not forbidden by Article xxviii., 286.

Advent, 76-78.

———— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

———— meaning of, 77.

———— why dalmatic and tunic not used in, 63, 411.

———— why marriages forbidden during, 389.

———— why *Te Deum* not used in, 164.

———— why year begins with, 407.

Agony (Devotion of the Three Hours'), on Good Friday, 435.

*Agnus Dei*, what and why sung, 365.

Alb (Choral), 36.

—— when and why worn, 37, 38.

—— (Eucharistic), 51.

—— of what symbolical, 52.

—— why celebrant preaches in his, 351.

\*Alleluia, "farewell to," 423.

—— why not sung in Lent, 423.

—— why sung in Hebrew, 423 (note).

All Saints' Day, why last of the Church's yearly commemorations, 448.

All Souls' Day, 447.

\*—— why graves decked on, 447.

—— why churches dedicated to, 447.

"All the whole Church," 307.

Alms, why removed from the Altar, 231.

—— why mentioned with the oblations in the Prayer for Church militant, 232.

Altar, 14-18.

—— bowing at the, 133.

—— why called the Lord's Table, 273.

—— why furnished with cross and candles, 21, 22.

—— why made so conspicuous, 16, 17.

—— why made of wood or stone indifferently, 273.\*

—— why placed at East end, 14.

—— why railed off, 15.

*Amen*, why sung in Hebrew, 423 (note).

Amice, 49.

—— its symbolic meaning, 50.

Andrewes (Bishop) on the Eucharistic Sacrifice, 214.

Anointing of the sick, 391.

Anthem, 185.

—— why the office hymn should serve as the, 185.

Antiphonal chanting, 127.

Apostles, feasts of, 92.

Article xxxi. does not condemn the word "Mass," nor the primitive doctrine thereof, 214.

Ascension Day, 76-78.

—— colour of vestments on, 69-72.

—— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 443.

—— tide, why marriages not celebrated during, 389.

Ash-Wednesday, 420.

—— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 421.

Aurora (or daybreak) Mass at Christmas, 332.

## B.

Banners, why employed in processions, 201.

Banns of marriage, why announced in Solemn Celebrations, 351.

Baptism, conditional, 378.

——— why it cannot be repeated, 378.

——— why "solemnly" administered on Easter and Whitsun Eves, 377.

——— why two stoles (violet and white) used in administering, 372.

Benedict (St.) appointed five Psalms at lauds and four at Evensong, 143.

——— derived his division of the Psalter from the Egyptian hermits, 143.

——— ordered the Lord's Prayer to be said aloud at Matins and Vespers, 177.

*Benedictus*, why incense is used at, 169, 174.

——— less frequently than at *Magnificat*, 174 (note).

——— *qui venit*, what and why sung, 361.

"Betrothal" in marriage, 381.

——— why performed in body of the church, 381.

Bezaleel, 8.

Biretta, 452.

Bishops Andrews, Cosin and Overall on Eucharistic Sacrifice, 214.

——— at Savoy Conference on Sign of the Cross, 178.

——— on turning of the priest from the people, 230.

Black, why used at funeral celebrations, 402.

Blue, how and why employed in Old English rite, 72, 73.

"Board (God's)," 273.\*

Bonnet of Jewish High Priest, 453.

Book of the Gospels, why censed, 350.

"Bounden duty and service (this our)," 311.

Bowing at the Altar, 133.

Boy, why server is generally a, 211.

\*"Boy Bishop," 417.

Bread (breaking of the) in Canon, 280.

——— the second time after the consecration, 296.

——— in the Eucharist, why it must be the purest wheat bread, 235.

- Brevint, the Mass "a Sacramental Passion," 317 (note).  
 Brown, how and why employed in Old English rite, 72, 73.  
 Bucer on manual gestures, 266.  
 ——— wished to make Sunday and festival reception compulsory, 270.  
 Burial of the Dead, why celebrated with "clerks," 396.  
 ——— why Cross used in the, 400.  
 ——— why Incense, 399.  
 ——— why Tapers, 401.

## C.

- Cadence (in Gregorian tones), 148.  
 Candlemasday, why so called, 419.  
 Candles, why distributed on the Purification, 419.  
 ——— why placed on the Altar, 22.  
 "Canon," what and why so called, 271.  
 Cantoris side of choir, 128.  
 ——— why it leads, 135.  
 Carols, why sung at Christmas, 416.  
 Cassock, what, and what it signifies, 32, 33.  
 Celebration, High. [See Section x. page 147.]  
 ——— what it is, 333.  
 ——— why Incense is used at, 338.  
 ——— Low, 204 [and Section ix. throughout, p. 79].  
 ——— loud responses out of character with,  
     252 (note 2).  
 Celebrates once a day (why a Priest only), 332.  
 Censing of choir, 172.  
 Chalice (mixed), its meaning, 234.  
 ——— veil, what and why used, 216, 241 (note).  
 Chancel, why severed off from rest of church, 12.  
 ——— screen, why surmounted by a Cross, 13.  
 Chanting from side to side, 127.  
 Chasuble, 57.  
 ——— its meaning, 58.  
 ——— why laid aside in preaching, 351.  
 ——— why placed on the Altar, 351.  
 ——— why it has a Cross behind and a pillar in front, 59.  
 Choir, censing of, 172.  
 ——— why faces Eastward at Glorias, 131.  
 ——— why sings from side to side, 127.  
 ——— why vested in white, 30.  
 ——— rulers of the, 137-142.

Choir, rulers of the, why they sit at the Psalms, 140.

\_\_\_\_\_ why they wear copes, 140.

Choral tippet, 43.

Christmas, 76, 78.

\_\_\_\_\_ colour of vestments, 69, 72.

\_\_\_\_\_ decorations, 418.

\_\_\_\_\_ midnight Mass at, 332, 415.

\_\_\_\_\_ proper Psalms, why chosen, 440.

\_\_\_\_\_ day, why three High Celebrations are sung on,  
332, 415.

\_\_\_\_\_ tide, why Carols sung at, 416.

\_\_\_\_\_ why Marriages forbidden in, 389.

Chrysostom (St.), on communicating fasting, 328.

\_\_\_\_\_ on neglect of Communion, 286.

Church was wont to require all to assist at the Eucharist  
on Sundays and festivals, 270.

Classes of feasts, 94, 96-108.

\_\_\_\_\_ of Sundays, 109, 110.

Claydon, Sanctus bell at, 263 (note).

Clement, Cyril, &c. (SS.), mention the *Lavabo*, 242.

Clergy buried in their vestments, why, 404.

\_\_\_\_\_ why bound to say Matins and Evensong daily, 124.

Clergyman, why the same cannot celebrate twice a day, 332.

"Cloak" (St. Paul's), 7 (note 2).

"Cloth" (fair linen), 305.

Colour of vestments explained, 69, 72.

Colours, the ecclesiastical, 19, 20.

\_\_\_\_\_ how and why employed, 69.

\_\_\_\_\_ the Old English or Sarum, 71.

\_\_\_\_\_ how and why employed, 72, 73.

Collect, why the Priest should stand at, 183.

\_\_\_\_\_ why said at Epistle corner, 221.

Commemoration of the Dead, 246, 307.

\_\_\_\_\_ why made with disjoined  
hands, 245.

\_\_\_\_\_ of the Living, 245.

Commemorations, why made in silence, 248.

"Common of Saints," 187.

Communicate fasting, why we should, 330, 331.

\_\_\_\_\_ once a day, why one can only, 332.

Communion cloth, 302.

\_\_\_\_\_ fasting, antiquity of, 328, 329.

\_\_\_\_\_ believed to have been ordered by St. Paul, 330.

\_\_\_\_\_ fasting, St. Chrysostom on, 328.



Communion, fasting, Bishop Jer. Taylor on, 328.

\_\_\_\_\_ in one kind, 289, 290.

\_\_\_\_\_ of the people, 299-302.

\_\_\_\_\_ spiritual, 304.

\*Compline, one of the "hours of prayer," 144.

Compton (Long), Sanctus bell at, 263 (note).

Confession, why sometimes said by the Communicants only, 251.

Confessions, why Priest uses a violet stole in hearing, 390.

Consecration, 277.

\_\_\_\_\_ actions connected with explained, 278-284.

\_\_\_\_\_ of a Church (anniversary of), why observed, 445.

\_\_\_\_\_ why the Priest kneels after each, 284, 288.

Cope, what, 39.

\_\_\_\_\_ when used, 40.

\_\_\_\_\_ of what symbolical, 41.

\_\_\_\_\_ why worn by rulers of the Choir, 140.

Corporal, what and why used, 216, 241 (note).

Cosin (Bishop), on Eucharistic Sacrifice, 214.

Cotta, a variety of the surplice, 209, 449.

Council of Trent (Catechism of the), at one with Article xxviii., 286 (note).

Cowl, 454 (note).

Cranmer wished to translate the Office hymns, 185.

Credence, 26.

\_\_\_\_\_ why the elements are prepared at the, 27.

Creed, why last two clauses inflected, 177.

\_\_\_\_\_ why sign of the Cross made at end of, 178.

\_\_\_\_\_ (Nicene), why reverences are made at "and was made man," 228.

\_\_\_\_\_ at "worshipped and glorified," 228.

\_\_\_\_\_ why sign of the Cross made at end of, 178.

Cross, sign of, 178, 179 (and note).

\_\_\_\_\_ why worked on Chasuble, 59.

\_\_\_\_\_ why placed on the Altar, 21.

\_\_\_\_\_ why used at funerals, 400.

\_\_\_\_\_ why used in processions, 200.

Crosses, why five are marked on the fair linen cloth, 23.

Cyril, Clement, &c. (SS.) mention the *Lavabo*, 240.

\_\_\_\_\_ (St.), on posture of Communicants, 302.

## D.

Dalmatic, 60.

——— why laid aside in preaching, 351.

——— why not laid on the Altar, 351.

——— why not worn in penitential seasons, 63.

——— why resumed on Maundy Thursday, 414.

——— why resumed on Midlent Sunday, 413.

——— why resumed on third and fourth Sunday in Advent, 413.

Damascene (St. John), on posture of Communicants, 302.

Daniel the Prophet prayed at the "hours of prayer," 143 (note).

Daybreak, Christmas Mass at, 332.

"Days of Obligation," 313.

Deacon, dress of, 60, 62.

——— why he ascends at the Consecration, 364.

——— why he ascends at the Creed, Sanctus, and Gloria, 343.

——— why he lays aside his dalmatic in preaching, 351.

——— why he ministers at the right of the Priest, 338.

——— why he stands below the Celebrant, 343.

Decani side of choir, 128.

Decorations, Christmas, 418.

Dead (Commemoration of), why made with disjoined hands, 245.

——— why prayed for *after* the Consecration, 245.

Details (minute) in ritual, 265, 455.

"Devotions," as distinct from Divine Service, recognised by Act of Uniformity, 435 (note).

——— of the Three Hours' Agony, 435.

\**Diptychs*, 247.

\*Dirge, why so called, 447.

——— contained in all the Primers, except that of 1553, 447.

Dominant, or reciting note in Gregorian tones, 145.

——— not to be confounded with the dominant in modern music, 145 (note).

Doxology or Gloria, 130.

——— bowing at the, 131.

\*——— formerly omitted on the three last days of Holy Week, 428.

——— why Choir face Eastward at, 131.

——— why sung full, 136.

"Duty and service (this our bounden)," 311.

## E.

Easter, 76, 78.

\_\_\_\_\_ anthems, 436.

\_\_\_\_\_ colour of vestments at, 69, 72.

\_\_\_\_\_ Eve, why Baptism "solemnly" administered on, 377.

\_\_\_\_\_ Monday and Tuesday, why observed, 438.

\_\_\_\_\_ proper Psalms at, why chosen, 442.

\_\_\_\_\_ taper, why used, 436.

\_\_\_\_\_ why all are required to communicate at, 437.

\_\_\_\_\_ why marriages are restrained through the Octave, 389.

\_\_\_\_\_ why the Antiphon "This is the day" is sung, 436.

Eighty-fourth Psalm applied by Spiritual writers to the Blessed Sacrament, 299.

Elevation of B. Sacrament, 291, 294.

\_\_\_\_\_ mystical meaning of the two-fold, 291.

Ember weeks, 79.

\_\_\_\_\_ colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

\_\_\_\_\_ why Te Deum is not used in, 164.

Ember week (Whitsun), why Te Deum used, 166.

Ending, in Gregorian tones, 148.

*Epinikion*, what and why so called, 261.

Epistle, why sometimes taken from the Old Testament, 226.

\_\_\_\_\_ why sung by Subdeacon, 344.

\_\_\_\_\_ (or South) side of the Altar, why Collect read at, 221.

\_\_\_\_\_ why Epistle read at, 223.

Eucharist, why so called, 212.

Evensong (Matins and), [Section v. page 41].

\_\_\_\_\_ object of, 122.

\_\_\_\_\_ the more direct part begins with the Lord's Prayer, 129 (note).

\_\_\_\_\_ why "daily," 123.

\_\_\_\_\_ why so called, 121.

\_\_\_\_\_ why sung, 126.

\_\_\_\_\_ why the Priest to say "Either privately or openly," 124.

## F.

"Fair linen cloth" of the Altar, its meaning, 23.

\_\_\_\_\_ why marked with five crosses, 23.

\*"Farewell to *Alleluia*," the, 419.

Fasts, 81.

- Fasts, why vigils of feasts observed as, 84.**  
**Fasting and abstinence, distinction between, 86, 87.**  
**Feasts and Fasts [Section iv. page 28].**  
**Feasts (double), what and why so called, 96.**  
 ————— why they have two Evensongs, 98-100.  
 ————— how they clash, 103-108.  
 ————— of Martyrs, why red is used on, 69.  
 ————— of "Obligation," 313.  
 ————— of our Lord, 90.  
 ————— of the Apostles, 92.  
 ————— of the Blessed Virgin, 91.  
**Feria, what, 114.**  
 ————— greater, 116, 117.  
**Final, in Gregorian music, 146.**  
**Flowers, why set on the Altar, 22.**  
**Font, why placed near the West door, 11.**  
**Forbes (Bishop), on Eucharistical adoration, 285.**  
**Fraction, or breaking of the Bread, 280, 296.**  
**Friday, why set apart as a day of abstinence, 88.**  
 ————— (Good) Devotion of the Three Hours' Agony on, 435.  
 ————— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 441.  
 ————— why altar stripped on, 432.  
 ————— why no celebration on, 430.  
 ————— why Reproaches are sung by way of Introit,  
 433.  
**Funeral celebrations, why black vestments are worn in,**  
 402.  
 ————— why incense is not used at the Introit  
 and gospel, 338 (note).  
 ————— of Infants, why white is used at, 403.  
 ————— why the cross is borne without the staff,  
 403.  
 ————— palls, why marked with the Cross, 400.  
 ————— why black is discouraged for, 402.  
 ————— tapers, 401.  
**Funerals, why incense is used in, 399.**

## G.

- Genuflexion, why made after each consecration, 284, 288.**  
 ————— why made on passing before the Consecrated  
 Sacrament, 133.  
**Gestures (Manual) or position of hands. See "Hands."**  
**Girdle, 53.**

Girdle, its meaning, 56.

*Gloria Patri*, 130.

— bowing at the, 131.

\* — formerly omitted on the three last days of Holy Week, 428.

— why choir face East at, 131.

— why sung full, 136.

\* — in *Excelsis* formerly omitted in penitential seasons, 67.

— why said after the Post communion, 314.

"*God's Board*," 273.\*

Gospel, incense and lights at the, 174, 349.

— St. Jerome on, 174.

— why not finished with "*Here endeth the Gospel*," 225.

— why sign of the Cross is made at the end of, 178.

— why sung by the deacon, 344.

— why sung facing North 159 (note).

— (or north) side of the Altar, why Service begun at, 217.

Gospels (Book of the) why incensed, 350.

\* Graves, why they were wont to be garnished on All Souls' Day, 417.

Green, one of the ecclesiastical colours, 69.

— why used on ordinary Sundays, 69.

Gregorian modes, what, 145.

— tones (the eight) 145, 146.

Grey, how and why employed in the Old English rite, 72, 73.

## H.

Habit, monastic, 454 (note).

Habits, clergy and sisters buried in their proper, 404.

Hands (position of), or manual gestures :—

— why disjoined at Commemoration of the Departed, 245.

— why extended at "*The Lord be with you*," 181.

— why extended at Collect, 222.

— why first extended and then joined at Nicene Creed, 227.

— why joined at "*Let us pray*," 182.

— (position of) at Prayer for Church militant explained, 241.

— at Preface, 264.

**Hermits** (The Egyptian) were wont to sing five Psalms at Lauds and four at Vespers, 144.

**High Celebration**, what, 333.

————— why incense used at, 338.

————— why three sung on Christmas Day, 332, 415.

**Hillyard** (Mr.) on minute details in ritual, 455.

**"Holy Father,"** why these words omitted from Preface on Trinity Sunday, 260.

**Holy, Holy, Holy.** See "Sanctus."

**"Holy is His Name,"** why reverence is done at, 132.

**Holy Week Gospels**, 425.

**Hood**, academical, 44.

————— monastic, 454 (note).

**Hosanna**, why sung in Hebrew, 419 (note).

**"Hours of prayer,"** what and why observed, 143.

————— monastic arrangement of, 144.

————— our matins and Evensong compiled from 144.

————— Sarum arrangement of, 144.

————— Services for the, 143.

————— provided in the various editions of the Primer, 143.

————— still used in Religious Houses, 143.

**Houselling cloth**, 302.

**Hymn** (the) at Matins and Evensong, 185-189. [See Office Hymn.]

## I.

### Illustrations :—

Alb (choral), 36.

— (Eucharistic), 51.

Amice, 49.

Biretta, 452.

Cassock, 33.

Censer, 338.

Chalice, 241.

— veil, 216.

Chasuble, 57.

Cope, 39.

Cotta, 449.

Dalmatic, 60.

Girdle, 53.

Maniple, 54.

Mitre, 453.

Rochet, 450.

Stole, 45.

Surplice, 34.

Thurible, 338.

Tunic, 60.

**Incense, lights, and vestments** always used in Christian worship, 8.

————— why offered at the Oblation, 354.

- Incense, why used at funerals, 399.  
 ——— why used at High Celebrations, 338.  
 ——— why used at the *Benedictus*, 169.  
 ——— why used at the Consecration, 363.  
 ——— why used at the Gospel, 349.  
 ——— why used at the *Magnificat*, 169.  
 ——— why not used at *Nunc Dimittis*, 174 (note).  
 ——— why not used at the Introit and Gospel in funeral celebrations, 338 (note).  
 "Intentions," what, 248 (note).  
 Intonation, 149.  
 ——— how used and why, 150, 151.  
 Introit, what and why sung, 335, 336.  
 Invocation (part of Canon), 276.  
 ——— why the Oblations are uncovered at the end of the, 278.  
 \*—"Ite, Missa est," 316.

## J.

- James and John (SS.), wore the Jewish mitre, 453.  
 Jerome (St.), on lights at the Gospel, 174.  
 Jews use lights at their reading of the Law, 174.

## K.

- \*Kneeling anciently omitted in the Paschal season, 343.  
 Kneels after each Consecration (why the Priest), 284, 288.  
 Kyrie (notation to), why varied at the fourth and seventh responses, 341.

## L.

- Lavabo, what and why so called, 242.  
 Leavened bread, why used by Eastern Church, 236.  
 Lent, 76, 78.  
 ——— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.  
 ——— meaning of, 77.  
 ——— why "Alleluia" omitted during, 423.  
 ——— why Dalmatic and Tunic not used in, 63, 411.  
 ——— why *Te Deum* not used in, 164.  
 ——— why marriages restrained during, 389.  
 ——— (fourth Sunday in), why called *Refreshment Sunday*, 413.  
 Lent (fourth Sunday in), why Dalmatic resumed on, 413.  
 Lessons, why read from a lectern, 158.

Lessons, why people sit during the, 161.

*Let us give thanks unto our Lord God*, 257.

———— why the Priest joins his hands at, 256.

*Lift up your hearts*, meaning of, 256.

———— why Priest extends his hands at, 264.

Lights, 22.

———— vestments and incense always used in Christian worship, 8.

———— why used at *Benedictus*, 174.

———— why used at the Gospel, 174.

———— why used at the *Magnificat*, 174.

———— why used at Sanctus and Canon, 362.

———— why used in funerals, 401.

\*Lighted taper, why held by candidate for baptism, 376.

Linen (Altar), why marked with five Crosses, 23.

Lips, why signed at the versicle: *O Lord, open Thou*, 129.

Litany [Section vii. page 73].

———— when “solemnly” sung and why, 196, 197.

———— why recited outside the screen, 195.

———— in procession, 196.

———— first religious service in Saxon England, 203.

Liturgy, why so called, 213.

———— of St. James quoted by St. Paul, 6 (note).

Location, Christ's Presence in the Sacrament not by way of, 286 (and note).

Long Compton, Warwickshire, Sanctus bell at, 263 (note).

Lord's Prayer, why sign of the Cross made at the end, 178.

———— two last clauses sung with inflexions, 176.

———— after Communion, why chanted, 369.

———— Table, why the Altar is so called, 273.

———— answers to the Table of Shewbread, 273.\*

Loud responses, out of character with Low Celebration, 252 (note 2).

Low Celebration, what, 204.

[See Section ix. p. 79, throughout.]

———— Sunday, why so called, 436.

## M.

*Magnificat*, why incense is used at the, 169, 174.

Maniple, 54.

———— its meaning, 56.



**Manual gestures, or position of hands, in ritual explained.**

[See "Hands."]

**Marriage, 380-389.**

\_\_\_\_\_ banns of, why announced in Solemn Celebration, 351.

\_\_\_\_\_ (ring used in), its meaning, 385.

\_\_\_\_\_ why placed on fourth finger, 385.

\_\_\_\_\_ on left hand, 385.

\_\_\_\_\_ why not solemnized in Advent, &c., 389.

\_\_\_\_\_ why white vestments are used in solemnizing, 380.

**Martyrs, why red is used on feasts of, 69.**

**Mary (Blessed Virgin), Feasts of the, 91.**

\_\_\_\_\_ why white is used on, 69.

**Mass, meaning of the word, 212.**

\_\_\_\_\_ (midnight) at Christmas, 332, 415.

\_\_\_\_\_ neither term nor true doctrine of, condemned in Article xxxi., 214.

\_\_\_\_\_ term applied to Communion Service in Edward's first Prayer Book, 215.

**Matins and Evensong. [Section v. p. 41.]**

\_\_\_\_\_ object of, 122.

\_\_\_\_\_ the more direct part begins with the Lord's Prayer, 129 (note).

\_\_\_\_\_ why so called, 121.

\_\_\_\_\_ why "daily," 123.

\_\_\_\_\_ why sung, 126.

\_\_\_\_\_ why the Priest to say "Either privately or openly," 124.

"Matins," one of the "hours of prayer," 143.

**Maundy Thursday. 427-429.**

**Mediation in Gregorian tones, 148.**

**Memorials, what, 190.**

**Mental and vocal prayer, 248.**

**Midst of the altar, why creed is said in the, 227.**

**Ministers, why they ascend at the Creed and *Gloria in Excelsis*, 343.**

\_\_\_\_\_ stand at a High Celebration, 342.

\_\_\_\_\_ on different steps, 343.

**Minute details in ritual, 265, 455.**

**Missah (or Sacrifice in the Eucharist), not condemned by Article xxxi., 214.**

\_\_\_\_\_ taught by best

English Divines, 214.

**Mitre, its meaning, 453.**

**Mitre, why cloven, 453.**

—— of Jewish High Priest, 453.

—— worn by SS. James and John, 453.

**Mixed chalice, its meaning, 234.**

**Modes (Gregorian), the fourteen, 145.**

**Monday and Tuesday in Easter and Whitsun weeks, why observed, 438.**

**"Most Highest," 307.**

## N.

**Name of Jesus, bowing at the, 132.**

—— why given in Baptism, 374.

**Néuma.** [See "Pneuma."]

**Nicene Creed, why reverences are made at "And was made man," 228.**

—— "worshipped and glorified," 228.

—— sign of the Cross made at end of, 178.

\* **Nones, one of the "hours of prayer," 143.**

**North (or Gospel) side of Altar, why service begun at, 217.**

—— why Gospel read at, 223.

—— why Gospel read facing the, 159 (note).

***Nunc Dimittis*, usually sung after a High Celebration, 371.**

—— why incense not used at, 174 (note).

## O.

**Oblation of the bread and wine, 238-240, 244.**

**Oblations (veiling of the) what it represents, 241.**

**"Obligation, days (or feasts) of," 313.**

**Octave of the Epiphany, why Matrimony may be solemnized on, 389 (note).**

**Octaves, 111.**

—— why observed, 112.

**Offertory, what and why so called, 229.**

**Office hymns (at Matins and Evensong), 185.**

—— how arranged, 186.

—— distinguished, 187.

—— sung, 188.

—— Cranmer was anxious to have them translated, 185.

**Orders (Holy) cannot be repeated, 378.**

—— (Dissenters') why not valid, 379.

Orders, higher, contain the lesser, 379 (note).

"Ordinary of the season," 187.

O's (the), or greater Antiphons for the last eight days of Advent, 414.\*

*O Sapientia*, 414.\*

Ostension, 292.

Overall (Bishop), on the Eucharistic Sacrifice, 214.

## P.

Pall (funeral), its colour and ornamentation, 402.

————— why marked with the Cross, 400.

—— (of chalice), what, 241 (note).

Palms (procession of), on the Sunday before Easter, 420.

Paschal taper, 435.

\*———— tide, kneeling formerly omitted in, 343.

Passion, Commemoration of (part of the Canon), 275.

Passion Sunday, why so called, 424.

———— tide, 76, 423 (and note).

———— its meaning, 77.

———— not to be confounded with Holy Week, 424 (note).

———— why pictures, &c. veiled during, 424.

Passion, the Eucharist a Sacramental, 317 (note).

Paul (St.), quotes from Liturgy of St. James, 6 (note).

———— the "cloak" which he left at Troas, 7 (note 2).

"Pax Domini," 316.

Penitential Psalms (the seven), why sung on Ash Wednesday, 421.

Pentecost, 76, 78.

———— proper psalms at, why chosen, 444.

———— why marriages are restrained during, 389.

———— why the Monday and Tuesday are specially observed, 438.

———— colour of vestments at, 69, 72.

———— why Baptism "solemnly" administered on the Eve, 377.

Planeta, why so called, 412.

———— why laid aside for the Gospel, &c., 412.

———— why worn in penitential seasons, 412.

Pneuma, what, 152.

———— its meaning, 154.

"Pointing" of the Psalms, 147.

Position of hands explained. See "Hands."

Post Communion, 306.

" Praise and thanksgiving (sacrifice of)," 310.

Prayer of humble access, 267.

————— why communicants only mentioned  
in, 268.

Preface, what, 256.

————— why chanted, 359.

————— why so called, 256.

\*Prime, one of the " hours of prayer," 143.

Primer contained services for the hours, 143.

————— contained dirge, or service of the dead, 447.

Processions [Section viii. p. 75.]

————— symbolism of, 199.

————— why banners are used in, 201.

————— why headed by a cross, 200.

————— why place of honour is at the end, 202.

————— first religious service in Saxon England, a  
litany in, 203.

" Proper of Saints," 187.

" ——— of the Season," 187.

————— Prefaces, 258.

————— when used, 259.

Psalms lxxxiv. applied by spiritual writers to the Blessed  
Sacrament, 299.

\* Psalms, lamps anciently kindled at the, 142.

————— why finished with a pneuma, 154.

\* ——— five were anciently wont to be sung at Lauds  
and four at Vespers, 143, 144.

\* Psalter, anciently lights were kindled in honour of the, 142.

\* ——— formerly sung through every week, 143.

————— Gregorian tones for the, 145.

————— of Salisbury, 144.

————— of St. Benedict, or monastic, 144.

————— pointing of the, 147.

————— ritual of the, 134-144.

## Q.

Queen, collect for the, 220.

————— Elizabeth's Latin Prayer Book allowed reservation,  
319.

## R.

Red, one of the Church colours, 69.

————— why used at Whitsuntide, 69.

- Red, why used on feasts of Martyrs, 69.  
 — why used on feasts of the Holy Cross, 69.  
 — (in the Old English rite), why used on Sunday, 72, 73.  
 — why used on Ash-Wednesday, 72, 73.  
 — why used on Maundy Thursday, &c., 72, 73.  
 Reproaches, what and why sung on Good Friday, 493.  
 Reservation, 319.  
 — preserved in Edward VI.'s first liturgy, 319.  
 — allowed in Collegiate Churches by Queen Elizabeth's Latin Prayer Book, 319.  
 Responses, loud, out of character with Low Celebration, 252 (note 2).  
 Re-table, 22.  
 Reverences (or bowings), why made at Our Lord's Name, 132.  
 — why made at Gloria, 131.  
 — why made in Nicene Creed, 228.  
 — why made in *Te Deum*, 168.  
 — why made towards the Altar, 133.  
 Ridley (Bp.) on Eucharistic Adoration, 285.  
 Ring (in Matrimony) its meaning, 385.  
 — why placed on fourth finger, 385.  
 — why placed on left hand, 385.  
 Rochet, a variety of the surplice, 209, 450.  
 Rogation and Trinity Sundays, why marriage restrained between, 389.  
 — days, what, 82.  
 — why so called, 83.  
 Rulers of the Choir, 137-142.  
 — why they sit at the Psalms, 140.  
 — why they vary in number, 139.  
 — why they wear copes, 140.  
 — why the choir has, 137.

## S.

- "Sacrifice of praise and thanksgiving," 310.  
 — (Eucharistic) not condemned by Article xxxi., 214.  
 — taught by best English Divines, 214.  
 \*Sacring bell, what and why formerly rung, 263 (note).  
 Sanctus, what and why so called, 261.  
 — why the priest begins the intonation at the, 227.  
 — why the deacon and sub-deacon ascend at, 343.  
 — why the people join in it, 262.  
 \* — bell, what and why formerly rung, 263.

Saturday (Holy), some ritualists hold that there should be no celebration on, 431.

Screen (Chancel) why surmounted by a cross, 13.

Seasons of the Christian year, 76.

————— their meaning, 77.

————— the four Ember, 79, 80.

Sedilia, 24.

————— how used and why, 27, 28.

Septuagesima, or greater Lent, 423.

————— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

————— meaning of, 77, 423.

————— and Low Sunday, why marriages are re-

————— why "Alleluia" omitted in, 423.

————— why dalmatic and tunic laid aside, 411-414.

————— why *Te Deum* not used in, 164, 165.

————— strained between, 389.

Sequence, 346.

Server, why generally a boy, 211.

————— why he is first communicated at a Low Celebration, 299.

————— why Priest has a, 206.

"Service of Song," 125.

"————— (this our bounden duty and)," 311.

\*Sext, one of the "hours of prayer," 143.

Shew-bread (table of) a type of the Christian Altar, 273.\*

Side, chanting from side to, 127.

Sign of the Cross, 178, 179.

Silence, why the commemorations are made in, 248.

————— (why the priest prays in) after the Consecration, 295.

Singing (antiphonal) or from side to side, 127.

Sisters, why buried in their proper habits, 404.

Solemn Celebration, what, 333.

————— why incense used at, 338.

"Solemnly" performed (why baptisms are) on Easter and Whitsun Eves, 377.

————— (why the Litany is) at certain seasons, 196, 197.

Solemn *Te Deum*. [Section vi. p. 72.]

"Song (Service of)," 125.

South (or Epistle) side of Altar, why collect is said at the, 221.

————— why Epistle is read at, 223.

Sparrow (Bp.) on fasting Communion, 328 (note).

Species, each in the B. Sacrament has its own special grace, 289.

Spiritual Communion, 304.

Standing, why the Priest communicates, 298.

Stone or wood (why the Altar is made of), indifferently, 273.\*

Stole, 45.

— how worn in the Eucharist, 55.

— its meaning, 56.

— white, why used in the Churching of women, 405.

— why first a violet and then a white is used in administering Baptism, 372.

— violet, why used in hearing Confessions, and in the Visitation of the Sick, 390.

— not worn by sub-deacon, 55.

— worn by deacon over left shoulder only, 55.

— — — — — why, 56.

Sub-deacon, dress of the, 60, 62.

— — — — — why a Priest frequently acts as, 379 (note).

— — — — — why he ascends at the Creed and Gloria in Excelsis, 343.

— — — — — why he does not read the Epistle in the planeta, 412.

— — — — — why he lays aside his tunic in preaching, 351.

— — — — — why he reads the Epistle, 344.

— — — — — why he stands below the Deacon, 343.

" Suffice (it shall)," 235.

Super-altar, 22 (and note).

Super-frontal, 22.

— — — — — why generally red, 23,

Surplice, 34.

— — — — — its meaning, 32.

*Sursum Corda.* See " Lift up your hearts."

Symbols, why employed in Divine Worship, 2.

## T.

Table, why the Altar is called the Lord's, 273.

— — — — — Holy, the Altar so called in the Eastern Church, 273.\*

— — — — — Jewish Altar so called, 273.

— — — — — and heathen altars, 273.

Taper (Paschal), 436.

\* — — — — — at Baptism, 376.

Tapers (funeral), 401.

Taylor (Bp.) on communicating fasting, 328.

**Taylor (Bp.), on Eucharistic Adoration, 285.**

*Te Deum* sung "solemnly" by way of thanksgiving.

[Section vi. p. 72.]

———— why incense not then "offered," 194.

———— why used on Epiphany Eve, 166.

———— why used in Whitsun Ember week, 166.

———— why Gloria is not added, 167.

———— why not used in Advent, 164.

———— why not used in Ember seasons, 164.

———— why not used in Lent, 164.

———— why not used on Vigils, 164.

*\*Tenebræ*, 428.

Terce, one of the "hours of prayer," 143.

*Ter Sanctus*, what, and why so called, 261.

———— why people join in it, 262.

———— why priest joins his hands at, 264.

Thirty-first Article does not condemn the word *Mass*, nor the primitive doctrine thereof, 214.

*This is the Day* (Antiphon at Easter), why sung in place of hymn, 436.

Three Hours' Agony (Devotion of) on Good Friday, 435.

Tones (Gregorian), what, 145.

———— how used, 146.

*Tonus peregrinus*, or the 8th irregular tone, 145.

Trent (Catechism of), at one with Art. xxviii., 286 (note).

"Trine" (or threefold) immersion in Baptism, 375.

Trinity season, 76.

———— its meaning, 77, 112 (note).

———— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

———— why it comes at the end of the year, 448.

———— Sunday, why marriages can be solemnized on, 389 (note).

Tuesday (Monday and) in Easter and Whitsun weeks, why observed, 438.

Tunic, 60.

———— why laid aside in preaching, 351.

———— why not laid on the Altar, 351.

———— why not worn in penitential seasons, 63.

———— why resumed on Maundy Thursday, 414.

———— why resumed on Midlent Sunday, 413.

———— why resumed on third and fourth Sundays in Advent, 413.

Twenty-eighth Article does not forbid the worship of Christ in the Eucharist, 286.



## U.

- Unction, or anointing of the sick, 391.  
 Unleavened bread, why used by Western Church, 236.  
 " Use " of Salisbury or Sarum, 144.  
 ——— monastic, 144.

## V.

- Veil (chalice), what and why used, 216, 241 (note).  
 Veiling of pictures, &c. in Passiontide, 424.  
 ——— Blessed Sacrament, 305.  
 ——— the oblations, what it represents, 241.  
 Venite, 134.  
 Versicles and Collect, why the Priest should stand at, 183.  
 Vespers (first) of a feast, its mystical meaning, 99, 100.  
 Vespers. *See* " Evensong."  
 Vespers, one of the " hours of prayer," 144.  
 Vestments in general. [Section iii. page 14.]  
 ——— colour of explained, 69, 73.  
 ——— lights and incense always used in Christian  
         worship, 8.  
 ——— the Eucharistic, 46-60.  
 ——— why worn, 47.  
 ——— their origin, 48.  
 ——— why special are assigned to the Eucharist, 47.  
 Viaticum, 393.  
 Vigils, 84.  
 ——— what they represent, 84.  
 ——— colour of vestments on, 69, 72.  
 ——— why *Te Deum* not used on, 164.  
 Violet, one of the Church colours, 69.  
 ——— why used in Advent, Lent, &c., 69.  
 ——— stole, why used at Baptisms, 372.  
 ——— why used in the Visitation of the Sick, 390.  
 ——— why used in hearing Confessions, 390.  
 Virgin, Feasts of the Blessed, 91.  
 ——— why white is used on, 69.  
 ——— Saints who are not Martyrs, why white is used on  
         feasts of, 69.  
 Vocal and mental prayer, 248.

## W.

Wafer or unleavened bread, 236.

Washing of hands or *Lavabo*, 242.

\*—— of the Altars on Maundy Thursday, 429.

Water, why mixed with the wine in the Eucharist, 233, 234.

*We do not presume.* [See "Prayer of humble access."]

White, one of the ecclesiastical colours, 69.

—— stole, why used at Baptisms, 372.

—— why used at the Churching of women, 405.

—— vestments, why used in solemnizing Matrimony, 380.

—— in the Funeral of infants, 403.

—— why Altar vested in on Maundy Thursday, 427.

Whitmonday and Tuesday, why observed, 438.

Whitsuntide, 76, 77.

—— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

Whitsunday, why Marriages are restrained during, 389.

—— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 444.

Whitsun Ember Week, why *Te Deum* is said in, 166.

—— Eve, why Baptism "solemnly" administered on, 377.

Widow, (why a) "plights her troth" with covered hand, 383.

Wine (in the Eucharist), why mixed with water, 233, 234.

Women (holy), not Martyrs, why white is used on feasts of, 69.

Wood, why Altar sometimes made of stone, and sometimes of, 273.\*

Wren (Bishop) was wont to elevate the consecrated Sacrament, 293.

## Y.

Y-Cross on Chasuble, its meaning, 59 (note).

Yellow, how and why employed in Old English rite, 72, 73.



# WORKS

BY THE

## LATE REV. DR. NEALE.

---

THE LAST TWO WORKS BY THE AUTHOR, ON HIS SICK BED.

ORIGINAL SEQUENCES, HYMNS, ETC. With  
Prologue in "dear memory of JOHN KEBLE." 2s. 6d. ; by post,  
2s. 9d.

STABAT MATER SPECIOSA : FULL OF BEAUTY  
STOOD THE MOTHER. 1s. ; by post, 1s. 2d.

---

A VOLUME OF SERMONS ON "THE SONG OF  
SONGS." Edited by the Rev. J. HASKOLL, Rector of East  
Barkwith, Wragby. *Second Edition.* 5s. ; by post, 5s. 4d.

THE PRIMITIVE LITURGIES, (IN GREEK,) OF S.  
MARK, S. CLEMENT, S. JAMES, S. CHRYSOSTOM, and  
S. BASIL. *Second* *ion.* With Preface by the Rev. Dr.  
LITTLEDALE. 6s. ; by post, 6s. 2d.

THE TRANSLATIONS OF THE ABOVE PRIMITIVE  
LITURGIES. With Introduction and Appendices. 4s. ; by post,  
4s. 3d.

HYMNS OF THE EASTERN CHURCH. TRANSLATED.

"They are literally, I believe, the *only* English versions of any  
part of the treasures of Oriental Hymnology."—*Preface.*

WORKS BY THE LATE DR. NEALE—(*Continued.*)

---

THE RHYTHM OF BERNARD OF MORLAIX, ON THE CELESTIAL COUNTRY. TRANSLATED. On Toned Paper, cloth, 2s.; by post, 2s. 2d. In *Calf*, 7s. 6d.; by post, 7s. 9d. In *Morocco*, 8s. 6d.; by post, 8s. 9d.

The Cheap Edition, 8d.; by post, 9d.

Also, the Companion Volume to the "RHYTHM."

HYMNS ON THE JOYS AND GLORIES OF PARADISE. 1s. 6d.; by post, 1s. 7d.

HYMNS SUITABLE FOR INVALIDS. On Toned Paper, 2s.; by post, 2s. 2d.

The Cheap Edition, 1s.; by post, 1s. 1d.

NOTES, ECCLESIOLOGICAL AND PICTURESQUE, on DALMATIA, CROATIA, ISTRIA, and STYRIA, with a Visit to MONTENEGRO. 6s.; by post, 6s. 4d.

TEXT EMBLEMS: a Series of Twelve beautiful Designs, by DALZIEL, illustrative of the Mystical Interpretation of as many Verses from the Old Testament. 2s.; by post, 2s. 1d.

"THE CHRISTIAN NURSE;" AND HER MISSION IN THE SICK ROOM. Translated from the French of Father Gautrelet, by one of the Sisters of S. Margaret's, East Grinstead. 2s.; by post, 2s. 1d.

THE FARM OF APTONGA: a Story for Children of the Times of S. Cyprian. 1s.; by post, 1s. 2d. In *Cloth*, 2s.; by post, 2s. 2d.

---

Kept on Sale. (Printed at the Burntisland Press.)

THE ANCIENT LITURGIES OF THE GALLICAN CHURCH. Now first Collected, with an Introductory Dissertation, Notes, and various Readings, together with Parallel Passages from the Roman, Ambrosian, and Mozarabic Rites. Parts I. and II., 2s. 6d. each; by post, 2s. 8d.

---

J. T. HAYES, LYALL PLACE, EATON SQUARE, S.W.

## SECTION XII.

## CEREMONIES PECULIAR TO CERTAIN SEASONS.

407. *Why does the Christian year begin with the first Vespers of Advent Sunday?*

—Because the Church “does not number her days or measure her seasons so much by the motion of the sun, as by the course of her Saviour; beginning and pursuing her year with Him, Who, being the true ‘Sun of Righteousness,’ began as at this time to rise upon the world, and as the ‘Day-Star’ on high, to enlighten them that sit in spiritual darkness.”

408. For the same reason the Church begins her Commemorations of the Saints with the Feast of St. Andrew (November 30), he being the first Apostle who received our Lord’s call—whence the Greeks style him the *Protoclete*, or “first called;” and Advent Sunday is always the Sunday *nearest* to this festival, whether before or after, or on the day itself.

409. Advent Sunday, as the head of the sacred season of preparation for the Christmas festival, is reckoned as a Sunday of the first or highest class, and always super-

sedes any festival that may fall on the same day. The other Sundays in Advent are of the second class, and take precedence of all but the highest feasts, because the Church is unwilling to turn from the contemplation of our Lord's approaching Advent in the flesh, which she is about to celebrate at Christmas, and of His second coming to which she looks, except for grave cause. For the same reason the week days in Advent are "Greater Ferias," and take precedence of *simple* feasts.

410. Exactly the same rule holds good with regard to *Lent*. The first Sunday (on which the season formerly began) is reckoned as a Sunday of the first class, for the same cause as Advent Sunday is; the three following Sundays are of the second class, the week days "Greater Ferias." The two last Sundays, as appertaining to *Pas-siontide*, are also of the first class; the week days greater Ferias, except the three days before Easter, which are "Double" Solemnities of the first class, though, from their peculiar character, lacking first Vespers. *Ash Wednesday* is a "Greater Feria," but on account of its solemnity as the "head of the fast," takes precedence of all but the highest feasts. *Septuagesima* and the two following Sundays (which form a kind of preparation for Lent) are of the second rank.

411. In Advent and Lent the Deacon and Subdeacon lay aside the dalmatic and tunic, as being a *festal* garment, and minister in the *planeta*, or folded chasuble, or in their albs.

412. The *planeta*, or planet (so called because from being folded back it presented the appearance of a star when partially eclipsed), is reckoned a penitential vest-

ment, for which reason the Subdeacon removes it, when he is about to sing the Epistle, and the Deacon does the same when he sings the Gospel. The Subdeacon, however, resumes it immediately after the Epistle, but the Deacon ministers in the alb till the Post-Communion, when he resumes the planet.

413. The Deacon and Subdeacon resume the dalmatic and tunic on Christmas Eve, if it fall on Sunday (and in the Latin rite, though not according to Old English use, on the third Sunday in Advent, and the fourth Sunday in Lent also). The reason assigned is, that Advent is a time partly of sorrow and partly of joy, and in the Lessons for the third Sunday the joyous element predominates (as it does also in the Epistle for the fourth Sunday). On the fourth Sunday in Lent the Church makes a kind of pause in her penitential exercises (whence it was called *Refreshment Sunday*), saying as it were with the Psalmist: "Though I walk in the midst of trouble, yet shalt Thou refresh me." (Ps. cxxxviii. 7.) Where this custom obtained, it was usual to employ purple dalmatics richly embroidered in gold, or to use dalmatics of a *rose colour*, yet further to symbolize the temporary change from sorrow to joy. "Thou hast put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness." (Ps. xxx. 12.) "The desert shall rejoice and blossom as the rose: it shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing." (Isa. xxxv. 1. 2.)

414. The dalmatic and tunic are worn on all festivals, when the service is of the festival (*i.e.* when it is not superseded by the Sunday service), both in Advent and Lent; and on Maundy Thursday—*propter solemnitatem cœnæ*—because the Church tempers her sorrowful memorial of our Lord's Passion with an element of gladness on account of the Institution of the Holy Eucharist.



414\*. On the last eight days of Advent, beginning with December 16, the Greater Antiphons are sung at Evensong before and after the *Magnificat*. These Antiphons were formerly called the O's, as each one began with that word. December 16 is marked in the Calendar "O Sapientia," from the first words of the first of these Antiphons: "O Wisdom, which camest forth out of the mouth of the Most High, and reachest from one end to the other, mightily and sweetly ordering all things: come and teach us the way of prudence."

415. *Why is there a Celebration at midnight on Christmas-Day?*

—Because that was the hour in which our Lord was born. It was customary to celebrate *three* High Masses on Christmas Day, the first at midnight, for the reason given above; the second at day-break, in honour of the Day-spring from on high, who on this day dawned upon the world; the third at the usual hour after Matins. The *threefold* celebration also was not without reference to the work of the Blessed Trinity in the Incarnation. (*See* Par. 332.)

416. The Choir children are accustomed to sing Carols during the Christmas season both in church and at the houses of the faithful, in imitation of the angels who at this time sang the first Gloria in Excelsis, when they told the "glad tidings" to the Shepherds at Bethlehem.

417. Special functions were assigned the *boys* attached to the Church at Christmas tide, in honour of the Childhood of our Blessed Lord. Of this kind was the observance of the *Boy Bishop*, which commenced on the feast of St. Nicolas (who is accounted the Patron Saint of children), and ended on that of the Holy Innocents, or Childermas. The Choir elected one of their number, who assumed the episcopal dress during this time, and preached a sermon. In choir, the Boy Bishop sang the service, the children occupying the *upper* stalls, the clergy and lay clerks the lower. In this custom (not without a quaint beauty) our forefathers saw an allusion to the childlike spirit inculcated by our Saviour, when He took a little child, and set him in the midst as a model to His disciples and apostles. The observance has long been obsolete. The custom of constructing a manger or crib in one of the aisles or side chapels is still continued on the Continent. Tapers are burned round it in honour of Him who is the Brightness of the morning, and whose light at this time dawned upon the world.

418. The decoration of churches with evergreens in times of festivity is derived from the Jews, from whom apparently the pagans borrowed it. There is a peculiar fitness in these decorations *at Christmas*, because this festival corresponds with the "feast of tabernacles." (Levit. xxiii. 40.)<sup>1</sup> The evergreens remain

---

<sup>1</sup> There is a tradition that our Lord was born during the feast of Tabernacles.

throughout the Epiphany season (which is the complement of Christmas), unless Candlemas day happen before Septuagesima, in which case they are removed prior to the Vigil.<sup>1</sup>

419. *Why are Candles distributed on the Purification of the Blessed Virgin?*

—In allusion to the words of Symeon at the Presentation of our Saviour in the Temple, “To be a *light* to lighten the Gentiles.” Hence the popular term “Candlemas day.”

420. Ashes were formerly distributed on Ash Wednesday, and branches of palm on the Sunday before Easter—the former in sign of penitence, the latter in commemoration of the triumphal entry of our Lord into Jerusalem, when the people cut down branches of palm, and strewed them in the way. (St. John xii. 12.) The hymn: “Glory, and laud, and honour,” is sung by seven boys, in allusion to the Hebrew children, who cried Hosanna.

421. The six psalms appointed for Ash Wednesday at Matins and Evensong, with that sung in the Communion service, form the “Seven Penitential Psalms,”

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Easter decorations* remain from Easter till the morrow of the first Sunday after Trinity, or rather till the following Thursday (the Octave of Corpus Christi); thus including the whole of the Paschal season, the Whitsun and Trinity Octaves, and the Octave commemorating our Lord's mystical presence in the Eucharist.

which were frequently recited during Lent from very early times. This day, however, retains the ferial lessons and hymns, because it ranks only as a ferial day, though of the highest class; and for the reasons assigned in the ensuing paragraph.

422. The proper hymns for Lent do not begin till the first Vespers of the Sunday, because the previous days are merely supplemental, having been added in order to complete the number of *forty days*, without reckoning in the Sundays, which, as weekly memorials of the Resurrection, are not included in the days of *fasting*. The Old English, and some other Service-books, divided Lent into three stages, by the use of a fresh set of hymns at the third as well as the fifth Sunday, in order to show the progression in holiness that should attend our penitential exercises: "They will go from strength to strength." (Ps. lxxxiv. 5-7.) The three divisions of Lent also typified the three night-watches of a beleaguered city, Lent representing the time of sorrow and penance, and so of the earthly exile of the Church, "going through the vale of misery."

423. The word "Alleluia," which signifies "Praise the Lord," and is a joyful song, is also omitted in Lent, or rather from Septuagesima to Easter, a period sometimes called the "greater Lent." This period is supposed to refer to the seventy years' captivity of the Children of Israel, when they hung their harps by the waters of Babylon, saying: "How shall we sing the Lord's song in a strange land?" It was formerly the custom to sing the "Alleluia" many times over in the service just before Septuagesima. This was called the "farewell to Alleluia." The "Alleluiatic Sequence," that is, the hymn beginning: "The strain upraise of joy and praise,

*Alleluia*," was so employed in Germany, and the hymn : " *Alleluia*, song of sweetness," in the diocese of Worcester.<sup>1</sup>

424. Before the first Vespers of the fifth Sunday in Lent, when the Church begins to celebrate the Passion of our Lord (whence this Sunday is called *Passion Sunday*, and the week that follows, " *Passion Week* "),<sup>2</sup> it is customary to *veil* crosses and pictures throughout the church ; they remain covered till the celebration of the Easter festival, except a feast occurs. Veiling or covering is a sign of mourning (Isa. xxv. 7); and in some parts of the church the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Church retains the Hebrew words *Alleluia*, *Hosanna*, *Amen*, and the like, rather than their vernacular equivalents, as a sign of her Hebrew origin (Rom. xi. 18), and in token that the law is summed up in the Gospel. So formerly (and still in the Latin Church) the Greek phrases : *Kyrie eleison*, *Christe eleison*, *Agios O Theos*, and the like, were employed—(according to Martene, in early times the Latin *miserere nobis* was similarly used by the Greeks)—as a sign that, whatever be her language, the Church is one. Thus the " Hebrew, Greek, and Latin " (St. John xix. 20) were all employed by the Liturgies of the Church ; and tradition asserts, that on the conversion of the Jews the Church will be visibly one under these threefold aspects—the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin Churches.

<sup>2</sup> The whole fortnight is called *Passion-tide* (see Par. 76) ; and the last week *Holy Week*, or the " *Great Week* ;" though colloquially *this* week has come to be called " *Passion Week* " in England.

crosses and pictures were accordingly veiled throughout Lent. The spirit of the Passion-tide veiling seems to be, that the Church would draw off our attention from everything but Him whose suffering she is commemorating, bidding us "Consider Him that endured such contradiction of sinners."

425. *Is it not customary to sing the Holy Week Gospels with peculiar ceremonies?*

—It is; and you will observe that they are of great length, so as to form a very marked feature in the services. On Sunday St. Matthew's narrative of the Passion is recited; on Monday and Tuesday that of St. Mark; on Wednesday and Thursday that of St. Luke; and on Friday that of St. John. Whence the Holy Week Gospels were called the "Passions." The customary lights and incense are omitted, except on Palm Sunday; and it is usual, when there are sufficient clergy, for the Passion to be sung by three; one reciting the words of the Evangelist, another those of Christ, and a third those of the Jews and others; or at least for the Deacon to sing these parts with different musical intonations. Another pious custom is for all to kneel down at the words which tell of the death

of our Lord, while a short pause is made for private prayer. And the usual responses : “ Glory be to Thee, O Lord,” &c., are omitted.

426. The Lenten veil, which hung between the choir and the altar, was suffered to fall at the words : “ the veil of the temple was rent in the midst ;” and on Good Friday at the words : “ they parted my raiment among them,” two acolytes removed the two linen cloths which covered the slab of the altar.

427. *Why is the Altar vested in white on Maundy Thursday ?*

—With reference to the Institution of the Blessed Sacrament. At Vespers, however, the Altar is stripped, and remains so till the first service of Easter, and during this time the bells are not rung.

428. The three last days of Holy Week have ever been observed with extraordinary solemnity, as covering the hours actually occupied by the Passion of our Lord. Formerly the *Gloria Patri* was omitted at the Psalms, and the choir-service began at once with the Antiphon before the Psalms ; and at the Nocturns, or night service, fifteen candles were arranged in a triangular candlestick at the Epistle side of the altar, one of which was extinguished after each of the fourteen Psalms recited in Matins and Lauds ; the six candles on the altar being also extinguished at the Benedictus, one at every other verse. Lastly, the fifteenth candle was hidden behind the altar, while the fifty-first Psalm was recited in a low

voice ; after which it was restored to its place at the top of the candlestick. This service was called, from the extinguishing of the lights, the *Tenebræ*, or darkness, and symbolised the darkness which covered the whole earth at the time of our Lord's Crucifixion, and the desolation and abandonment which our Saviour endured in His Passion. The fifteenth candle was not extinguished, but was hidden awhile, and then re-instated, because God did not leave our Lord's Soul in Hell, nor suffer His Holy One to see corruption, but raised Him from the Dead.

429. The Altars were formerly *washed* with wine and water on Maundy Thursday, in memory of the act of St. Mary Magdalene, who washed our Lord's feet, and wiped them with the hair of her head, in preparation for His burial. (St. Matth. xxii. 12.) And it was customary for Bishops and Superiors of religious Houses to wash the feet of twelve or thirteen poor persons. The Kings of England long performed this office, the last who did so being King James II. It was afterwards performed in the Chapel Royal by the Archbishop of York, acting for the Sovereign ; but since 1731 has been suffered to fall into disuse. Doles, however, are still distributed by the Sovereign on this day.

430. *Why is there no Celebration on Good Friday ?*

—The Church has from very early times been wont to stay on this day her Memorial Sacrifice out of veneration to that Bloody Oblation which was then consummated ; as also because the Eucharist must always be more or less of a joy-



ful service, and so seemed out of character on this day of desolation and grief.

431. Formerly the Sacrifice was pleaded to-day as on all other days, but the *Consecration* (as the festal element) was lacking; that is to say, the Sacrifice was offered with the Blessed Sacrament which had been consecrated the day before. This was called the *Mass of the Presanctified*, and was celebrated by the Easterns every day in Lent except Saturday and Sunday, and by the Armenians on Holy Saturday as well. In the absence of reservation, the best ritualists hold that the course most consonant to the mind of the Church, is to say the Ante-Communion Office only on these days, or at least on Good Friday.

432. *Will you explain to me why the Altar in many churches remains stripped on Good Friday?*

—The custom has reference to the stripping off of our Lord's garments at the pillar, and to His hanging naked on the cross. Stripping was also a sign of humiliation; and so just as the Church on festivals puts on her "beautiful garments" (Isa. lii. 1), and makes her clothing of "wrought gold" (Ps. xlv. 14): so on the day of sorrow and abasement she "lays her robe from" her like the King of Nineveh in the great fast (Jonah iii. 6). But if the Altar cannot be conveniently laid bare, or is richly ornamented in

colours, it is usual to cover it with a *black* frontal.

433. *What are the "Reproaches"?*

—A selection of Anthems, sung in the place of the Introit. They are chiefly taken with a few verbal alterations from the prophecy of Micah, intermingled with a very ancient form of the Kyrie Eleison, used in the Greek Church. They set forth "the exceeding ingratitude of His chosen people to our Blessed Lord, and of those who by their sins crucify Him to themselves afresh." Towards the end the hymn: "Sing my tongue the glorious battle," which commemorates the Life and Passion of our Lord, is sung.

434. The Introit must always be more or less of a festal feature. (See Par. 336.) During Passion tide the Church, to impart somewhat of a mournful aspect, omits the Gloria, but on this day the whole "Psalm of Entrance" is hushed. For the same reason the "Reproaches" are sung *kneeling*.

435. The "Three Hours' Agony," which is a devotion frequently observed on Good Friday, is not a liturgical service, but arose from the need of an exercise, to enable the faithful to spend the actual hours, during which the Lord of Glory hung on the Cross, in devout meditation and prayer. Such "devotions" are common on the Con-

tinents, and are expressly provided for in Edward VI.th's Acts of Uniformity, provided they do not let or hinder the course of public worship.<sup>1</sup>

Matins having been sung at Matins 9 A.M., at which hour it is believed that the Scourging at the Pillar took place, and the Altar service being concluded about noon, when He was nailed to the Cross, the clergyman who is to conduct the devotion kneels at the faldstool where the Litany is wont to be sung, and begins by the Invocation of the Holy Trinity. The prayers and hymns that follow are intermingled with short sermons, generally on the Seven Words spoken by our Lord from the Cross, and are so arranged as to keep the mind fixed without weariness on the Agony and Death of our Lord, and to conclude at 3 P.M., at which hour our Lord gave up the ghost.

436. *Are there any peculiar observances connected with Easter?*

—It is the custom in some places to place an extra candle on the floor of the Sanctuary, on the Epistle side of the Altar. This is called the *Paschal taper*. It is lighted every day at High Celebration and Evensong till Low Sunday, and thence on Sundays and Festivals till Ascension

---

<sup>1</sup> "Provided also that it shall be lawful for all men, as well in churches, chapels, oratories, or other places, to use openly any psalms or passages, taken out of the Bible, at any due time, not letting or omitting the Service, or any part thereof, mentioned in the said book."—See Burn's Ecclesiastical Law, vol. iii. ch. iv. 9, page 251.

day, when it is removed after the Gospel. It typifies the glory and majesty of our Lord's Resurrection, and the spiritual joy with which we should celebrate it. Easter has always been observed with a solemn Octave, both because it is the direct Christian counterpart of the Jewish Passover (Exod. xii. 15. 16), and on account of its dignity as the "queen of feasts." For this reason the first Sunday after Easter is called Low Sunday, as being "a little lower" only than the feast itself. And many ritualists hold that the special Anthems, in place of the *Venite*, (and some say, but with less reason, the proper Psalms,) <sup>1</sup> should be sung every day throughout the Octave. To impress upon us the unity of the feast, though it lasts throughout the week, the Antiphon: "This is *the day* which the Lord has made: we will rejoice and be glad in it," is sung in place of the hymn up to the first evensong of Low Sunday. Another observance is the frequent introduction of the triumphant "Alleluia" during the Easter season.

437. The Church requires all her children to communicate three times in the year, of which Easter, on

---

<sup>1</sup> See Par. 439-444 on the Proper Psalms for feasts.

account of its dignity and its relation to the Passover, is to be one.

438. The special observance of the Monday and Tuesday in Easter and Whitsun weeks would seem to have reference to the work of the Holy Trinity in the Resurrection and Descent of the Holy Ghost. Formerly Wednesday was so observed also (thus preserving the same truth, without counting in the feast-day itself); and perhaps for a similar reason, as well as to commemorate the three classes of Martyrs—those in will and in deed, those in will though not in deed, and those in deed though not in will—the Church so early set apart the *three days* after Christmas as special festivals.

439. *Does not the Church interrupt her monthly course of psalmody on certain feasts?*

—Yes, on the three great festivals, for the sake of greater dignity; and on Ascension day, as the next in rank; on Ash Wednesday, in order to introduce the seven Penitential Psalms, “the seven weapons wherewith to oppose the seven deadly sins;” and on Good Friday, as the solemn memorial of the Death of Christ.

440. On *Christmas day* the 19th Psalm is used with reference to the Birth of our Lord, the true sun of righteousness, who then “came forth as a bridegroom,” wedded to our humanity “out of His Chamber,” the Virgin’s womb, “rejoicing as a giant to run His course” of sorrow and humiliation, to save a ruined world; the 45th, as telling of that “girding with the sword,”

namely our flesh, with which he would conquer Satan, and crush his empire over the human race; the 85th, as speaking of "righteousness and peace kissing each other," that is, offended justice being satisfied, and our "peace" being made by the Incarnation and subsequent Oblation of our Lord; the 89th, as foretelling the subduing of Egypt, that is, the Empire of Satan, by the mighty arm of our Incarnate Lord; the 110th, as referring to "the dew of" our Lord's "birth"; and the 132nd, as telling of the habitation "for the mighty God of Jacob," viz. the substance of our flesh.

441. On *Good Friday*, the 22nd Psalm foretells the Passion of Christ; the 40th speaks of the "innumerable troubles" that "came about" Him on the way of sorrows, and the weight of our "sins"—which He made as it were His own—taking "such hold upon" Him, that He was "not able to look up"; the 54th tells of that mighty oblation, that "offering of a free heart"—the great *MISSAH NEDABA*—which our Lord made of Himself on Calvary; the 69th, which is sung in the evening, speaks of that "rebuke" of God which "broke" His "heart," when He cried in bitterness of soul: "My God, my God, why hast Thou forsaken me?" the 88th of those "wonders among the dead," when He went and "preached to the spirits in prison" (1 St. Pet. iii. 19); and then looks forward to Easter morning:—"Shall the Dead rise up again, and praise Thee?"

442. The *Matin Psalms* at *Easter* speak of "the breaking of" the bonds of the rulers "asunder," when our Lord brake through the sealed stone, and passed by the astonished keepers; of the awakening "right early"—even when it was yet dark; of the showing His people the power of His works, when He appeared to

St. Mary Magdalene and to the other disciples. The Evening Psalms recount the resurrection of Christ the "simple" Man, the Sinless One "out of the dust" of death; the driving back of Jordan, a type of the bursting of the Gates of Death: the stone which the builders refused, viz., Him whom the rulers of the Jews rejected, becoming the headstone in the corner.

443. On *Ascension day* the Church tells in her Psalmody of the "glory" of Christ being "set above the heavens"; and of His being crowned with glory and worship "at the right hand of God"; of His "dwelling" in the "tabernacle of God" even in the heaven of heavens, the "holy hill" of God; of God's setting "a crown of pure gold" upon His Head; of the "King of Glory" entering, in triumphal majesty, through "the everlasting doors" of heaven; of His "going up" into heaven "with a merry noise," and there reigning "the King of all the earth"; and of His "setting up" Himself "above the Heavens," and His "glory above all the earth"; that His "beloved"—that is, His disciples—for whom He tasted death, "may be delivered."

444. On *Whitsunday*, the 48th Psalm tells of the Apostles waiting for "the loving kindness" of God, even the promised gift of the Comforter, "in the midst of" Jerusalem, in the Upper Chamber, which had been the scene of the first Eucharist; the 68th, of the "gracious rain," the Spirit of God, which He sent upon His "inheritance," the Church; the 104th, of the "Breath" or Spirit of God, which He this day sent forth to "renew the face of the earth"; and the 145th, of that "declaring of the power" of God, when every one heard in his own tongue the wonderful works of God, and the

" memorial of His abundant kindness " was showed, by the adding to the Church of three thousand souls.

445. *Why is the Anniversary of the Consecration of a Church kept with so much solemnity?*

—Because we should thank God for all the benefits we and others derive from the services and the means of grace dispensed there; and as a type of the final triumph of the Church of Christ—the "great congregation" of those whom "no man can number"—to which the hymns and Introit specially refer us.

446. All Saints' Day is similarly observed with solemnity, as a commemoration and anticipation of the final glory of all God's Elect, when "the Marriage of the Lamb" shall come, and "His Bride," the Church, having "made herself ready," shall be "arrayed in fine linen, clean and white, for the fine linen is the righteousness of Saints." (Rev. xix. 7, 8.)

447. But since the triumph is not yet come, and because sin and weakness delay its approach, the Church was wont to observe the morrow of All Saints' Day, as the commemoration of *All the Souls* of her children departed, praying that God would speedily accomplish the number of His Elect, and would give to the souls of the



departed rest and peace, "not remembering our offences, nor the offences of our forefathers." Whence there were two Evensongs on All Saints' day, the second Vespers of All Saints being followed by the Vespers of the Dead. Churches are dedicated in honour of "All Souls," in token that they "are in the hand of God," and having "died in the Lord," are "blessed," even though they were not such bright and burning lamps in the Church of God as to have deserved to be enrolled in her catalogue of eminent Saints. For the same reason it was the custom for the faithful to deck the graves of their friends and relations with flowers on this day. Though the public commemoration of All Souls' Day is not now insisted on by the Church of England, the day has ever been marked in the Kalendars—which till 1832 were a monopoly of the Stationers' Company, and received as such the sanction of the Archbishop of Canterbury;<sup>1</sup> and in every "Primer" or Manual of private devotion issued by authority, except the second of King Edward VI., issued in 1553, the *Dirge*, or Service for the Departed (so called from the first word of the initial Antiphon in Latin—*Dirige*, "Direct Thou"), has found a place; a sufficient indication of the mind of the Church, that at Hallowtide we should remember *both* classes of the Departed. (See Par. 245-247.)

448. All Saints' Day is the *last* of the Church's greater commemorations of her de-

---

<sup>1</sup> The other days were: March 17, *St. Patrick*; Thursday after Trinity Sunday, *Corpus Christi*; July 7, *Translation of St. Thomas of Canterbury*; August 15, *Assumption of the Blessed Virgin*. But the different editions of the Primer add others, and Queen Elizabeth's Latin Prayer Book has a Saint for nearly every day in the year.

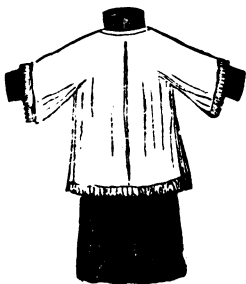
parted worthies, because it sums them all up in one, and because the final triumph of the Saints, and the marriage of the Lamb shall be at the *end* of time ; just as Trinity Sunday is the last of her sacred seasons, because the Beatific Vision is the eternal *end* of the Church Triumphant, when time shall be no more.

# APPENDIX.

## SECTION XIII.

### THE COTTA, ROCHET, AND BIRETTA.

449. It remains to notice two varieties of the Surplice, which are not uncommonly to be met with.



The *Cotta* is somewhat shorter than the Surplice, and not quite so full, and is either entirely wanting in sleeves, or (which is more correct) has short ones reaching to a little below the elbows. The bottom of the *Cotta* and the ends of the sleeves are frequently edged with lace, an ornamentation which corresponds with the "Apparels" of the Alb.

450. The *Rochet* is a short Surplice (generally made of lawn, or fine linen) with tight sleeves, resembling those of the Alb. Both these varieties of the Surplice have resulted from the inconvenience of the wide

pendant sleeves of the *Surplice proper* in certain functions, such as the administration of Baptism, when the sleeves were apt to get wetted, and in serving at the Holy Eucharist at times when the Alb would be out of place.



451. The *Rochet* is also an Episcopal vestment.

452. What is the "*Biretta*"?

—A square cap of black silk or other stuff, worn by persons in Holy Orders at processions and other outdoor functions.



453. The *Biretta* is the non-episcopal form of the *Mitre*, and both signify the helmet of salvation and the glory of the Priesthood. The *Mitre* is cloven in the midst, like the "tongues of fire" which fell upon the Apostles (Acts ii. 3), to show that the wearer is a successor of the Apostles, and shares with them in the Pentecostal gift. It is a question whether the use of the *Mitre* is of extreme antiquity. Some even assign its introduction to the 10th century. But Bona (*Rer. Lit.* lib. i. c. xxiv.), while admitting the possibility



of the fact, shows that *some* ornament of the head was worn from the earliest ages. The reader will remember that under the Old Law a "Mitre" (or turban) of fine linen was appointed for the High Priest (Exod. xxviii. 4), and "Bonnets" for the Priests and Levites (verse 41). The Fathers mention that St. James the Just, first Bishop of Jerusalem, and also the Apostle St. John, were in the habit of wearing the golden plate, which was prescribed for the Mitre of the High Priest in the Jewish Ritual.



In the Eastern Church the actual Mitre is unknown, but the clergy wear a particular kind of Cap, over which they arrange the Hood.

454. Both the Episcopal Mitre and the Biretta are frequently worn in Church. The universality of the practice shows that the injunction of St. Paul (1 Cor. xi. 4) either referred *alone* to the particular acts of "praying" and "prophesying," or were mainly directed against the uncomeliness of a woman entering the assembly of the faithful with uncovered head (verse 15). The Bishop wears the Mitre in the acts of Confirmation and conferring Orders, but lays it aside when engaged in prayer; the Biretta is worn on entering and leaving church, and in some parts of the church during the singing of the Psalms. Members of Religious Orders use the *Hood* of their habit (sometimes but improperly called the *Cowl*) in place of the Biretta.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The cowl is a loose vestment, worn over the *frock*, in

NOTE A. (*Referred to at p. 115.*)

455. The following valuable remarks on attention to minute details in ritual are from a paper read at York during the Congress by the Rev. E. A. Hillyard, Rector of St. Laurence's, Norwich :—

“Another objection occurs to the minds of many, who are themselves favourers of Ritualism up to a certain point. Those, I mean, who are wont to admire the comeliness and decency of the general features of a ceremonial service, but express themselves offended at the apparent attention to minute detail. Granted, say they, that our services are too cold and repellent, and that you have made them hearty and attractive, but why this continual bowing and scraping, these genuflexions and crossings, this constant attention to such very small acts? These surely are trivialities, puerilities, of themselves unedifying, beneath the dignity of a priest, his place, and the object of our worship. In short, let us, they say, have choral services, but no tomfoolery. Taking away the terms containing more of abuse than argument, the objection is intelligible, but it may be said that analogy (which has been allowed in the hands of Christian apologists to play a large part in the defence of truth) does not lead us to this same contempt of minutiae which our opponents exhibit. Things, to us small and apparently trivial, have their place in Creation—an office however,

---

the winter season and during the night office. The other parts of the monastic or religious habit are: the *scapular*, a narrow strip of serge or other stuff covering the shoulders and hanging before and behind down to between the knee and the hem of the frock; and the *girdle* or *rope*, which is generally ornamented with three knots, signifying the three vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience; and (in some Orders) the *sandals*.

obscure to us, which they fulfil—a meaning and an importance in their minute lives, though scarcely if at all subservient to man, his uses, and his wants. Nay, further, their very uselessness to us, tells of Another Whose praise or wisdom they display; that whereas we refer all things to ourselves as centre, and condemn or approve according as we are pleased or displeased, like the fly on the cartwheel, nevertheless we ourselves are only insignificant parts of a great whole, owing our importance only to the nearness of our relations to God. Moreover, it may be said, God is of such a nature, that as He could be mastered by nothing however great, so He can overlook nothing however small. Thus if these minute acts relate to God, they tend to Godliness as acts of homage, whose smallness is to be taken as no signs of worthlessness, but as indications of reverence and recollection marked and approved by the All-Seeing Eye quite as much as the general scope of man's service, or the tendency of his greater religious acts. We, on the other hand, might reply to the objectors of Ritual minuteness—'If you could frame a world, consistently with the principles on which you would prescribe rubrics, you would necessarily have everything in large type. No animal would be smaller than a megatherium, every fish very like a whale, every flower at least equal in size to a sunflower, every sound a shout: nothing in creation would be less useful than an ox or an ass; nothing more beautiful than your own ugly theories, from which all beauty is banished, or more pleasing to the eye than the sober admixture of black and white. You, in fact, would have framed a Brobdignag world in half-mourning, but God has not.' Ritualism, if we may reverently say so, follows the order of nature, for it is the calling forth from the chaotic, disordered acts of man, a *κοσμος* containing living forms of praise and wor-

ship, analogous to things of earth, air, sea, and sky. The despised and ridiculed minutiae of worship tend in the limit to Godliness just as the myriad hosts of insect life, as they flit in the sunbeam, are factors however small in the great product of nature's praise; and reverential care about trifles is a mystic counterpart in the kingdom of grace, to the microscopic wonders in the sister kingdom of nature. If it should be answered that this spirit of attention to detail, however consonant with natural religion or even the earlier stages of revealed religion, is repugnant to Gospel liberty—and at any rate more akin to a spirit of Pharisaical exactness than to true holiness—such persons should be reminded of the extreme minuteness observable in the Gospels in the accidents of our Lord's typical obedience, His sacramental acts, and also in what may be called the Ritual of that penitence which is the threshold of Godliness.

“ Our Lord's human mind gave minute attention to the fulfilment of every detail of prophecy, as well as of all righteousness; neither does it seem necessary that He should care for crumbs; that the colt on which He sat should be unbroken, whereon never man sat, or that His tomb should be like the manger at Bethlehem, that wherein never man had been laid. He even seems at Emmaus to have imposed on Himself the same Divine law of Eucharistic form, which He observed after the last Passover—the lifting up of the eyes, the fraction of the bread, by its identity of ceremony, with that they had so lately seen, made the disciples recognise Him. Thus He opened the understandings of the disciples, whose hearts had only burnt at His words, by His significant but minute signs. In like manner it was by external and minute acts, a Ritual of Healing typical throughout, that he chose to act on the deaf and dumb man. The spitting on the ground, the touching the



tongue, the upward look so often recorded, the sigh—all preceded that word, which of itself alone was sufficient to perform His will, even to the creation of a world. The cases of the apparently unnecessary touching of lepers are also obvious examples of some law of His own, by which the lightest touch of His garment wrought effectually on the bodies of men. Nor can we limit this law by confining it altogether to His Sacred Person; blessings inferior in kind are conveyed under the old law by similar imposition of hands; handkerchiefs from the bodies of Apostles work miracles in the new, their hands convey the Holy Ghost, while their successors now claim the grace of their Apostolic predecessors, and exercise it (even if they doubt their power) in our rites of confirmation and ordination. I see the same honour conferred on things small and mean, whether in the repeated preference in the younger and weaker in the Old Testament, or in the choice of agents of no reputation in the New—whether of lowly-born attendants and followers, for His earthly life, or in the appointment of the mean things, water, bread, wine for the visible signs of His inward graces and presence. Again, when spiritual life is concerned, not only have we the condemnation of him that despiseth small things, but the highest value placed on the childlike mind, the necessity of stooping if we would enter the narrow portal of His kingdom, in which the sighing of a contrite heart is acceptable, the standing afar off noted, the downcast look recorded, the smiting on the breast unreprieved, penitential tears allowed to touch Him, woman's glory and pride (her beautiful hair) accepted, instead of meaner things, to wipe His sacred feet, and all without a hint that the simplicity of faith and love required none of these things. In short, minuteness seems no valid objection to rites in a church where beginnings are

described as resembling in minuteness and insignificance the mustard seed and the leaven. We might rather say that if all rule, and all dominion, and even Christ's kingdom were to be laid down, that God may be all in all in Heaven, shall not this universal dominion of God be asserted on earth even now in the order of eyes, hands, posture, gesture, and liturgical acts of those His servants who stand before that altar which is to them in a mystery His throne, and therefore the most fitting place for the most complete and careful worship? And shall not that conduce to Godliness which turns our bodily members into instruments of holiness, gives up the waywardness and thoughtlessness of will, and offers with care insignificant acts of body to perfect, as far as may be, that oblation of ourselves, our souls and bodies, made in our most solemn office? Only, then, could such acts of minuteness be misplaced, if offered to one of finite capacities or limited powers of apprehension; but as He has revealed Himself as the Infinite One, there is no reason why the gamut of worship should not be as boundless as His attributes, and contain every note from man's smallest acts up to the highest of the unceasing worship of the heavenly host."

---

**"He shall reverence my Sanctuary."**





# INDEX.

---

*The figures refer to paragraphs, not to pages. Ceremonies alluded to in the work, which are now obsolete, are marked with an asterisk.*

---

## A.

Ablutions, 320-329.

Absolution, 253-255.

———— (Sacramental), why ministered in violet stole, 390.

Abstinence and fasting, distinction between, 86, 87.

———— why Friday set apart as a day of, 88.

Access, prayer of humble, 267.

———— why communicants only mentioned in, 268.

\* "Accumulation," what, 143.

Acolytes, why boys serve as, 211.

Address, prayer of. *See* "Prayer of humble Access."

Adoration (Eucharistical), 285.

———— Bp. Andrews on, 285.

———— Forbes on, 285.

———— Jeremy Taylor on, 285.

———— not forbidden by Article xxviii., 286.

Advent, 76-78.

———— colour of vestments in, 69, 72.

———— meaning of, 77.

———— why dalmatic and tunic not used in, 63, 411.

———— why marriages forbidden during, 389.

———— why *Te Deum* not used in, 164.

———— why year begins with, 407.

Agony (Devotion of the Three Hours'), on Good Friday, 435.

*Agnus Dei*, what and why sung, 365.

Alb (Choral), 36.

—— when and why worn, 37, 38.

—— (Eucharistic), 51.

—— of what symbolical, 52.

—— why celebrant preaches in his, 351.

\*Alleluia, "farewell to," 423.

—— why not sung in Lent, 423.

—— why sung in Hebrew, 423 (note).

All Saints' Day, why last of the Church's yearly commemorations, 448.

All Souls' Day, 447.

\*—— why graves decked on, 447.

—— why churches dedicated to, 447.

"All the whole Church," 307.

Alms, why removed from the Altar, 231.

—— why mentioned with the oblations in the Prayer for Church militant, 232.

Altar, 14-18.

—— bowing at the, 133.

—— why called the Lord's Table, 273.

—— why furnished with cross and candles, 21, 22.

—— why made so conspicuous, 16, 17.

—— why made of wood or stone indifferently, 273.\*

—— why placed at East end, 14.

—— why railed off, 15.

*Amen*, why sung in Hebrew, 423 (note).

Amice, 49.

—— its symbolic meaning, 50.

Andrewes (Bishop) on the Eucharistic Sacrifice, 214.

Anointing of the sick, 391.

Anthem, 185.

—— why the office hymn should serve as the, 185.

Antiphonal chanting, 127.

Apostles, feasts of, 92.

Article xxxi. does not condemn the word "Mass," nor the primitive doctrine thereof, 214.

Ascension Day, 76-78.

—— colour of vestments on, 69-72.

—— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 443.

—— tide, why marriages not celebrated during, 389.

Ash-Wednesday, 420.

—— proper Psalms for, why chosen, 421.

Aurora (or daybreak) Mass at Christmas, 332.

# WORKS PREPARING FOR PUBLICATION

BY

J. T. HAYES,

LYALL PLACE, EATON SQUARE, S.W.

NEW EDITIONS OF THE FOLLOWING WORKS,  
BY THE LATE REV. DR. NEALE,  
ARE NEARLY READY:—

In the Press, the Second Edition, considerably Enlarged, of

1. "*The Song of Songs.*" A Volume  
of Sermons thereon. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.  
Edited by the Rev. J. HASKOLL, Rector of East Barkwith,  
near Wragby,

Also, in the Press, the Second Edition, 6s.,

(Dedicated, by permission, to the Lord BISHOP of EXETER) of

2. *The Primitive Liturgies*, (In  
Greek,) of S. Mark, S. Clement, S. James, S. Chrysostom, and  
S. Basil. Edited by the late Rev. J. M. NEALE. With New  
Preface by the Rev. Dr. LITTLEDALE.

"This useful little book is calculated to stimulate the inquiries of the younger clergy, and may, at no cost, be advantageously circulated among them."—*Literary Churchman*.

B

Nearly Ready, the Second Edition (3s.) of

### 3. *The Moral Concordances of*

S. ANTONY of PADUA. Translated, verified, and adapted to modern use, by the late Rev. J. M. NEALE; with Additions from the "*Promptuarium Morale Sacra*" of THOMAS HIBERNICUS, an Irish Franciscan of the 14th Century. With New Preface by the Rev. Dr. LITLEDALE.

#### CRITIQUES ON THE FIRST EDITION.

"It may seem a very strange proceeding to publish the works of an ancient saint in the Romish calendar, and an Italian saint to boot, for the edification of Protestants of the present day, for the press already teems with the labours of modern theologians, who jostle each other in their appeals for public patronage. One can hardly fancy there is room for a saint to squeeze in—yet there is reasonable ground for bringing the Paduan into competition with the divines of the present generation. In the first place his work is not a 'party' production, so controversy is avoided; and, in the next place, it analyses Holy Writ, and after separating its parts, reunites them under different heads to which they may be supposed to relate. In this way the saint supplies at a glance texts apposite to any given moral subject, and also affords suggestions for, or the framework of, sermons."—*Western Times*.

Of the first edition the *Guardian* remarked: "Is a really edited as well as translated republication of a long-forgotten attempt, made about six centuries since, to accomplish a very useful work—viz., a Concordance of Scripture texts according to identity of sense, and not of words. S. Antony's book refers to practical topics principally, and contains the pith of more skeleton sermons within some hundred pages than are contained in the score of volumes which compose Mr. Simeon's '*Horæ Homileticæ*,' or in similar modern publications."

"The work seems more especially calculated to assist the clergy in the composition of their sermons."—*Churchman*.

In the Press.

### *The Ritual "Reason Why:" a*

Simple Explanation of the Meaning of Ritual Observances.

By the Author of "*The Liturgy of the Church of Sarum*."

Nearly Ready,

### *Essays on Re-Union.* By Members

of the ENGLISH, ROMAN, and GREEK Churches.

## SARUM versus ROME.

Preparing for Publication, uniform with the "Liturgy of the Church of Sarum."

Price to Subscribers not to exceed 10s.

*Certain Services of the Church of*

SARUM: being the Offices of Prime and Compline, and the Vigils for the Dead; the Forms of Blessing and Sprinkling Holy Water; the Peculiar Ceremonies for Certain Seasons; the *Missa in Nocte Nativitatis Domini*; the Lenten Litanies; the Blessing of the Ashes and of the Palm Branches; the Washing of the Altars and the *Maundy*; the Benediction of the Fonts, &c., on Holy Saturday: and the like. Translated from the Latin, with an Introduction and Explanatory Notes, and Illustrated with Extracts from the Consuetudinary of the Church of Sarum, and the Plain Song of the Mechlin Office-Books. By CHARLES WALKER, Editor of "The Liturgy of the Church of Sarum, &c. Dedicated to the Reverend the President of Sion College, Middlesex.

[See also last page of Catalogue.]

Ready, price 1s.; by Post 1s. 1d.

*The Union Review Almanack.* An

Ecclesiastical Kalendar for the Year of Grace 1867. Together with a Paper on "The Legal Vestments in the Church of England;" and "Notes on the Celebration of Dedication and Harvest Festivals."

This Almanack, in addition to the usual contents of such a publication, contains full directions for the Celebration of Divine Service, according to the Use of the Church of England, rendering it a perfect *vade mecum* for the Clergy.

## CRITIQUE ON PREVIOUS ISSUES.

"This is a very valuable addition to our Ecclesiastical almanacks."  
—*Church Review*.

"A most useful and admirable Kalendar."—*John Bull*.

"We have never seen so excellent a plan so clearly carried out."  
—*Court Circular*.

"We can most strongly recommend 'The Union Review Almanack' as being exactly what is wanted for vestry use."—*Church Times*.

1867 B 2



## “RE-UNION” PUBLICATIONS.

### **The MAGAZINE for CATHOLICS and RE-UNIONISTS:**

[NOTICE.—*The publication of this Magazine invariably takes place some days before the 1st of the month on which it is issued. If there be any difficulty in obtaining it in the ordinary way, Subscribers are requested to apply direct for their Copies to Mr. HAYES, the Publisher.*]

Publishing, in Nos., once in Two Months, price 2s.;  
by Post 2s. 2d. (Annual Subscription, including Postage, 13s.)

### *The Union Review.* A Magazine of

Catholic Literature and Art. This Magazine, faithfully representing the “Catholic” and “Re-Union” Schools in the Church of England, to which, however, Anglicans, Greeks, and Roman Catholics are constant contributors, has received a large share of public attention both at home and abroad during the past four years.

[A few Copies of Vols. I., II., and III. are still to be had, 13s. 6d. each; by post 14s. 6d. Those who are desirous of securing complete sets should apply at once to the Publisher direct.]

### VOL. I. OF THE NEW SERIES,

BRING

THE VOLUME FOR THE YEAR 1866,  
IS NOW READY,

Price 13s. 6d.; by Post 14s. 6d.

And contains:—I. Dr. Pusey's Eirenicon.—II. Dr. Lightfoot on the Galatians.—III. Liddon's University Sermons.—IV. Musings of a Veit.—V. Mr. De Lisle on Re-Union.—VI. The Two Communion in Scotland.—VII. Sancta Clara on the Thirty-nine Articles.—VIII. Ashley's Victory of the Spirit.—IX. Ritual.—X. The Decree of the Council of Florence Critically and Historically examined.—XI. The Doctrine of Sacrifice.—XII. Jurisdiction.—XIII. Ecclesiastical Fenianism.—XIV. Roman Catholic Critics of the “Eirenicon.”—XV. Jurisdiction.—(No. II.)—XVI. Dr. Newman and Devotion to the Blessed Virgin.—XVII. Mr. Cazenove and Ourselves.—XVIII. The Other Gospel.—XIX. “Ecce Homo” and its Critics.—XX. Tottrists at Rome.—XXI. Creature Worship.—XXII. Church and the World.—XXIII. Recent Liturgical Works.—XXIV. Dollinger's First Age of

Christianity.—XXV. — Campanology.—XXVI. Rome or Sarum?—XXVII. Unconscious Truth Seekers.—XXVIII. The King's Highway, and other Poems.—XXIX. The Lincoln Diocese.—With Fragments &c. Varia.—Original Poetry.—Literary Notices, &c.

*\*\*\* All Books for Review, Letters, Communications, &c., to be addressed to the Editor, care of Mr. J. T. HAYES, Publisher of the Union Review, Lyall Place, Eaton Square, London, S.W.*

"This Review has now been in existence for more than four years, and appears to have commanded the attention and adhesion of a large number of influential members, both clerical and lay, belonging to various portions of the Church Universal, by the originality and reasonableness of its policy, as well as by the marked ability with which those interesting topics which it has made peculiarly its own have been handled in its pages."

Though originated by members of the National Church of England, it has ever been freely opened both to Latins and Orientals, not only for correspondence, criticism, and suggestions as to practically promoting Visible Unity, but concerning all principles and details connected with Catholic Restoration and sound and true Reforms. Several distinguished Roman Catholics—on the Continent, as well as at home—have likewise contributed **Leading Papers** and **Reviews**; so that the aim and scope of the Re-union School, which exists both in the Anglican communion and amongst Roman Catholics, both in England and on the Continent, as well as amongst members of the Greek Church, are duly set forth in its pages.

Believing that the adoption of true political principles—for there is an abstract truth in Politics, just as there is in Religion—is of the utmost importance, the **UNION REVIEW** has, from the outset of its career, invariably adopted a moderate Conservative policy. Without blindly pledging themselves to individual politicians, or following personal leaders into all the impossible and unexpected positions of a shifting variation, its conductors have striven faithfully to uphold, and will always be found supporting, those who, at the head of the great Conservative party, have not only faithfully acted in the past, but have formally and explicitly pledged themselves in the present to give to the Established Church reasonable opportunities, a similar liberty of independent action, and equal toleration as that enjoyed by Roman Catholics and the sects.

While studiously careful to maintain its own, both in Religion and Politics, it will ever be found that charity is not wanting in the manner in which its principles are enunciated; while its Correspondence columns will at all times be open to the fullest and freest discussion of controverted subjects, passing over only such as are plainly contrary to faith and morals.

The above "Table of Contents" will give some idea of the variety of subject and interest of detail with which the great leading principles of restored Intercommunion and visible Re-union are treated in its pages.

Price 1s. ; by Post 1s. 1d.

## *The Experiences of a 'Vert [Convert].*

Reprinted from the "UNION REVIEW."

Price 1s. ; by Post 1s. 1d.

## *The Principles of Ecclesiastical*

JURISDICTION ; with special reference to the Authority of the Anglican Episcopate. (Reprinted from the UNION REVIEW.)

Price 8d. ; by Post 9d.

## *Sacrifice : a Theological Essay.* By a SCOTTISH PRIEST. (Reprinted from the UNION REVIEW.)

"A capital essay, thoughtful, well put together, and comprehensive. It well deserves reprinting; and our advice to those who wish for clear ideas upon the subject is, buy it."—*Literary Churchman*.

Price 3d. ; by Post 4d.

## *Prayers for the Re-union of* CHRISTENDOM. Compiled by the Secretary of the A.P.U.C. Approved by English, Greek, Roman, Scottish and Colonial Bishops.

Price 1s. ; by Post 1s. 1d.

## *The Future Unity of the Christian* FAMILY. By the Rev. T. T. CARTER, Clewer.

"The sermon is a very remarkable one, and coming from one who holds so deservedly a place in the esteem and reverence of English churchmen, is indeed a cheering sign."—*Union Review*.

"Mr. Carter's sermon is large-minded and eloquent,—it could not be otherwise,—and brings out well the fact that each great section of the Church has wrought out some great truth of doctrine or sentiment, but failed in the due appreciation of others. Mr. Carter also, with no less ingenuity than truth, points out that the desire of Re-union is essentially inconsistent with secession in any direction, seeing that the former implies both sides to be parts of the living Church, while the latter denies this of the one seceded from."—*Guardian*.

"This is a sermon which should be read, and which those who will read will buy, and which those who have bought and read will read again and again. It is distinguished by all Mr. Carter's peculiarly intense realization of unseen facts and spiritual forces, and cannot

help acting as a tonic to our own less vigorous faith and spiritual perception."—*Literary Churchman*.

"The chief point which strikes us is the spirit of lowly love, humility, and forbearance which animates this sermon, and which is ever enforced upon us with regard to others. It will repay the reading."—*Church Review*.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

## *The Catholic Eirenicon, in* FRIENDLY RESPONSE to DR. PUSEY.

"This is the famous declaration of 'Roman Catholic principles,' in reference to God and the King. It has lately been reprinted, not we suppose without melancholy reference to the change which has come over the Ultramontane section of the English Roman Catholics."—*Saturday Review*.

"It is so valuable and interesting, indeed, that we should advise all our readers to procure and keep it by them . . . It is a most remarkable and perfectly irrefragable demonstration of the fundamental difference on really important points, between old and new Popery."—*Church Review*.

"This is a very extraordinary tract. If any one wishes to see how far the present noisy Romanism of modern times has drifted away from its ancient moorings, he has nothing to do but to turn to this ancient standard and landmark of its old position. Its present re-publication is admirably well-timed, and we are greatly indebted alike to editor and publisher. No doubt there will be a considerable number of letters and pamphlets which many will find it worth while to bind up and preserve along with the *Eirenicon*. 'This is certainly one of them.'—*Literary Churchman*.

Price 5s. ; by Post 5s. 4d.

## *The Second Series of Sermons* on the RE-UNION of CHRISTENDOM. By Members of the ENGLISH, ROMAN, and GREEK Churches.

"We recall the first series of these Sermons with feelings of admiration and enjoyment. This second series is a fit continuation of the first. Their eloquence, charity, and argumentative ability, are as striking as their object is high and admirable."—*The Churchman*.

"This is a volume of great beauty and excellence, and one which is not only worth reading but worth keeping."—*Literary Churchman*.

"These sermons seem to us of much more practical value than those which were first published. They each point to some definite effort, which even individuals may make towards the great end in view. The majority of them are above the average in ability."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"If we were to take stock of the contents of both series, as regards general merit, we should award the palm to the contribu-

tions furnished to the late issue. . . . . There is a fine sermon of Mr. Carter's, and another by Mr. Bennett. — *Church Times*.

"As a whole, we think them decidedly superior to the volume which was published ten months ago. There is no question but that these two volumes are emphatically the sermons of the day—that they that they will occupy a permanent standing place in Anglican Church literature."—*Church Review*.

The *Guardian* says, in reviewing these sermons :—"The Re-union of Christendom must, indeed, be the continual object of the prayers and therefore, of the efforts of every man that can be called a Christian at all; and every word that lends strength to the true spirit in which such unity should be sought, must claim thankful recognition from all of all communions who love their Lord in truth.

It is undoubtedly clear that any step which revives in the English Church her real living hold upon the principles embodied in her Prayer-Book and formularies, will be a step towards Re-union, and the best step towards it. . . . The spirit in which the members of the society (the A. P. U. C.) regard the great Christian Churches, from which we are unhappily severed, is so unspeakably more Christian than the repulsive spiritual pride, combined with the most woeful ignorance, which too commonly prevails in this country, that we cannot but wish them most heartily first good guidance and then success."

Price 7s. by Post 7s. 5d.

**SANCTA CLARA ON THE THIRTY-NINE  
ARTICLES.**

## *Paraphrastica Expositio Articuli-*

**LORUM CONFSSIONIS ANGLICANÆ;** the Articles of the Anglican Church paraphrastically considered and explained. By FRANCISCUS A. SANCTA CLARA (Christopher Davenport). Reprinted from the Edition in Latin of 1646, with a Translation, together with Expositions and Comments in English from the Theological Problems and Propositions of the same writer, and with additional Notes and References. Edited by the Rev. FREDERICK GEORGE LEE, D.C.L.

"Nothing can be fairer in theological controversy than SANCTA CLARA; his Commentary on the 'Articles,' from a Roman Catholic point of view, being especially interesting. It is believed that this remarkable Treatise formed the basis of Mr. NEWMAN's Tract No. 90."—*British Magazine*.

"Our dear friend's [Dr. Newman's] Tract [No. 90] has done good and lasting service by breaking off a mass of unauthorised traditional glosses which had encrusted over the Thirty-nine Articles. The interpretation which he then put forth, and which in him was blamed, was at the time vindicated by others without blame. The blame was occasioned by two circumstances, owing to which Tract 90 was thought to admit much more than our friend meant. . . . But

the principle of Tract 90—viz., that we are not to bring into the Articles, out of any popular system, any meanings which are not contained in their words, rightly and accurately understood, was not and could not be condemned.”—*Eirenicon*, by Dr. Pusey, 1865.

“It is impossible to over-estimate the enlarged views that must follow upon the careful and thoughtful study of this noble work of Sancta Clara. The articles were doubtless framed most vaguely to allow of the widest conceivable latitude of interpretation; to admit in short, of more than one interpretation. . . . Sancta Clara’s “Paraphrastica Expositio” is a great gain: it will carry a stronger conviction with it than Tract 90, because it is more naturally put together; because it appeals more unreservedly to the teaching of the Universal Church; and because its spirit and temper is so gentle, mild, and loving. Yes! this book is a noble effort to preserve the unity of the Spirit in the bond of Peace. The book is most expensively and beautifully got up.”—*Church Review*.

“Indeed, its appearance almost simultaneously with Dr. Pusey’s ‘Eirenicon’ may be regarded as a Providential coincidence not the least remarkable among the many indications vouchsafed that the ‘prayer of peace’ which now in all portions of the Lord’s Vineyard ascends in loving union with that prayer in the upper chamber of which it is the echo and the prolongation shall in no wise return to us empty. For in these two books we have, as it were, a lowering on either side of the drawbridge that shall one day span the stream of doubt and distrust—a waving, on either side, of the flag of truce that shall one day usher in the advent of perfect Peace.”—*Union Review*.

“The present volume is especially valuable as coming from the pen of a priest of the Roman Church. This endeavour to heal the Schism in the Church was regarded with suspicion by the Roman Court of Davenport’s time, and the attempt is viewed with more than indifference by that Court now.”—*The Churchman*.

“The celebrated Tract No. 90, published now nearly a quarter of a century ago, was currently reported to have been more or less founded upon the treatise of Sancta Clara. . . . It is very curious to find at this distance of time the treatise itself reprinted, apparently in the interest of the movement towards Re-union, as it is understood on the Roman Catholic side.”—*Westminster Review*.

“Mr. F. G. Lee, well-known for his connexion with the present well-meant efforts towards the Re-union of Christendom, has republished ‘Sancta Clara on the Articles,’ and it is a serviceable publication. Even on purely bibliographical considerations it has a high value; but bearing in mind the converging opinions of so many minds on the temporary and occasional character of our Articles, and the certainty that the subject is acquiring daily prominence, as witness, on various sides, Dr. Pusey’s ‘Eirenicon,’ Dean Milman’s ‘Speech,’ and Mr. Ffoulkes’ ‘Divisions of Christendom,’ we must say that such a contribution to the subject as Sancta Clara’s work is very important.”—*Christian Remembrancer*.

“As a literary curiosity, it may interest inquirers into English Church history.”—*Guardian*.

## LITURGICAL WORKS, &amp;c.

Just Published;

With Introduction by Rev. T. T. Carter, M.A., of Clewer;

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION, TO

THE BISHOP OF SALISBURY.

In 4to., uniform with "SANCTA CLARA on the ARTICLES of the ANGLICAN CHURCH" (price 7s., by Post 7s. 5d.)

THE

**Liturgy of the Church of Sarum.**

Translated from the Latin, and with an Introduction and Explanatory Notes. By CHARLES WALKER.

"It is thoroughly deserving of careful attention. All who profess to follow the rule of the Church of England should strive to be Anglicans indeed. In such a strife they could not study a more useful and practical book than that before us, to which Mr. Carter, of Clewer, has prefixed a very appropriate Preface, and which is most gracefully and properly dedicated to the Bishop of Salisbury. The Notes and Explanations, as was to have been expected, throw a vast amount of light on the rules and directions of the Prayer Book."—*Union Review*.

"This, so far as we know, is the first complete version into English of the Sarum Liturgy—that is of Ordinary and Canon of the Mass, as it existed and was used in England from the days immediately succeeding the Norman Conquest to the eve, or rather the morrow, of the Reformation, to the accession, that is, of Edward VI., and from the accession to the death of Queen Mary. What that Liturgy was before the Conquest, say on the Dedication of S. Peter's, Westminster, we may well imagine from the knowledge we seem to have of S. Osmund. . . . Points there are, which publications, or rather republications, like this of Mr. Walker—for it is after all but an old friend under a new face—are calculated, and indeed intended, to press home upon us. Setting aside the grand doctrine of the Sacrifice, to which the 'Divine Liturgy,' is an unerring, an unmistakeable witness, very many other points there are, interesting to an English churchman of to-day, upon which the book of ages past, the old Liturgy of Sarum, bears with a weight and a force of authority, all the more effective for being implied rather than imposed, and therefore acknowledged as that of a venerated counsellor, and accepted as that of a Divine guide. . . . One of the highest purposes which an early book can answer, is to supply the defects, explain the obscurities, and settle the uncertainties of a later; and it would be much cause of congratulation to Mr.

Walker if, in translating the old Sarum Liturgy, he had contributed to amend, improve, and simplify, not the text, but the use of the English Church of to-day. . . . We can in this notice follow mainly one view. That view is, and has been, a view of his volume as a translation of old Sarum to new, for the use and benefit of the Sarum that now is, to whose good Bishop he so gracefully dedicates his work. And a good translation and goodly volume it is, worthy of all consideration, worthy of all acceptance; and therefore it is that to it, as a book, and not to its sacred contents, as a subject, we address ourselves. . . .

It is enough to say that Mr. Walker has acquitted himself here [on the Canon] as in the Ordinary, in all essential particulars, so as to earn the thanks of every English churchman who may be fortunate enough to fall in with, and wise enough to profit by, his very seasonable and painstaking publication. . . .

Struck as we are with what seems the strange custom of so many of the Clergy about us, of having Holy Communion on Good Friday, and possessed with a natural instinct, shared in by the Easterns in the highest degree, then by the Milanese and the Westerns generally, against consecrating on that day, we have especial desire to call attention to the well known 'MASS OF THE PRE-SANCTIFIED'—the service of the Eucharistic Oblation, consecrated in the West on Maunday Thursday, or Good Thursday, as the Drontheim Missal calls it; and to the Introduction and Notes with which Mr. Walker so well provides it, and which must now stand for us and our readers in the place of longer and fuller information."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

"Mr. Walker very modestly describes this handsome and well-timed volume as a pendant to Dr. Neale's excellent translation of the Primitive Liturgies. We are not going to quarrel with him for a word; and all that we could say is, that it fully deserves to be bought and valued for itself and on its own merits, and not merely as a pendant to other works, however valuable. It is a translation of the Ordinary and Canon of the Mass, of the Mass of the Pre-sanctified, and of the Calendar, according to that Use of SARUM, with which, in these days of Liturgical inquiry, everybody is so familiar in name, but with which so few, except professed students, have any real acquaintance. We need hardly say that some acquaintance with the older services of the Church of England is indispensable to anything like a right understanding or a right use of her present Prayer Book, and we must therefore give a corresponding welcome to this most convenient and serviceable translation of the Sarum Liturgy. Let our Clergy and our laity look through this volume, however cursorily, and they will then see for themselves in what spirit our revisers carried out the principles which they have declared in their Preface to our Prayer Book. Throughout the book Mr. Walker gives us ample explanatory Notes; a good and succinct account of the Sarum Use is contained in the Preface; and the book is most appropriately dedicated to the present Bishop of Salisbury."—*Literary Churchman*.

"The Liturgy of the Church of Sarum' is a valuable step towards making English readers acquainted with the real origin of the Prayer Book. And as an acquaintance with the sources of the book is, no doubt, a great safeguard against the rash and ignorant tampering with it which is in vogue with shallow people like the Revisionists.



It will hardly serve as authority for restoring those rubrical or other features which in the Prayer Book have been intentionally dropped, although, of course, it will help us to realise with something of accuracy what those features were. It will assist people towards knowing what they are about; and therefore we welcome heartily, as on the one hand the recent careful edition of the text of the 'Sarum Missal,' so on the other hand this translation of the Ordinary and Canon of the Mass from the same rite."—*Guardian*.

Price 6d.; by Post 7d.

## *Suggestions for the Due and Reve-*

**RENT CELEBRATION of the HOLY EUCHARIST.** Printed for "The CONFRATERNITY of the BLESSED SACRAMENT of the BODY and BLOOD of CHRIST."

"These Suggestions have been drawn up in the hope of furthering the endeavour now almost everywhere being made to invest our Celebrations of the Holy Eucharist with greater reverence and significance, by a more careful attention to details of Ritual. It will be seen that the Rubrical directions of our Prayer-Book have been scrupulously adhered to. Only certain subordinate rules on points not provided for, and Prayers to be said privately by the Celebrant at the chief parts of the Service, have been added; and it is hoped that they will be found in harmony with the spirit and intention of our Liturgy."—*Preface*.

"We wish very much to bring this judicious pamphlet under the notice of our clerical readers. And we welcome it more especially in the interest of those who desire such a standard of ritual observance as will fully satisfy the demands of reverence and devotion, and which at the same time shall steer clear of such minuteness as should in any way distract the attention and devotedness of the celebrant. The suggestions which it offers have been drawn up with great care, and after much consultation with persons whom most of us hold in highest esteem, both for personal devoutness and for ritual knowledge. The rubrical directions of our Service-Book have been rigorously observed, and its spirit (we believe) equally preserved. It is in the details of matters not specially provided for,—those details on which when our office-book was revised, it was never supposed any formal guidance could be wanted—and in the supply of private prayers for the officiating clergyman, that the value of the pamphlet lies."—*Literary Churchman*.

Just published, in Tryptich form, cloth 7s. 6d.; or, in leather 12s. 6d. (Postage 6d.)

## *A Set of Altar-Cards, adapted*

FROM THE SARUM USE, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PRAYER BOOK. They have been most carefully engraved, and have in the centre a Woodcut of the Crucifixion, taken from the English Missals.

## THE VESTMENT QUESTION.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

### *The Scriptural Rationale of* EUCCHARISTIC VESTMENTS. By the Hon. and Rev. ROBERT LIDDELL.

"While deprecating any hasty ritual changes; Mr. Liddell boldly defends the whole ceremonial principle."—*Church Times*.

"Mr. Liddell writes with undoubted force, and most telling effect. His principles are sound; his arguments good, while the conclusion of the discourse is eloquent and eminently striking."—*Union Review*.

"Mr. Liddell maintains, not the legality only, but the rightfulness of Eucharistic vestments, while deprecating hasty reintroduction of them."—*Guardian*.

"Mr. Liddell pleads for the Scriptural authority of vestments in his usual loving and fervent way. He is neither a formalist nor a sensationalist, but has been led on to speak by his deep appreciation of the spiritual realities of the Christian altar."—*Church Review*.

Now Ready—Price 8d. ; by Post, 9d.

### *Notitia Liturgica*; containing Plain

Directions for a Low and a High Celebration; Matins and Evensong; Holy Baptism, Confirmation, Holy Matrimony, and Churching of Women; Visitation of the Sick, and Burial of the Dead; Processions; Floral Decorations; with Prayers before and after Service. To which are appended Brief Rules for Sacristans. With an OFFICE FOR THE ADMISSION OF A CHORISTER.

"As to the great value of the 'Notitia Liturgica,' much care has evidently been taken to make it as accurate as possible. The directions as to the proper mode of celebrating the Holy Eucharist are so clear that a priest who took them for his guide could scarcely go wrong. If our numerous correspondents whose ritualistic queries cover our table week after week would procure this, they would save both themselves and us a world of trouble."—*Church Times*.

Just Published, Price 3s. ; by Post 3s. 2d.

### *Ritual Inaccuracies; or, Errors*

GENERALLY MADE IN THE CELEBRATION OF THE HOLY EUCHARIST. Compiled by the HONORARY SUB-SACRISTAN to the "SOCIETY OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT."

"Displays immense research and merits careful attention. It is based on authorities which must ever possess very great weight throughout the whole Western Church, and is one of the most practical treatises on the subject that has ever been published."—*Union Review*.

## THEOLOGICAL, &amp;c.

Second Edition. Price 2s. 6d.; by Post 2s. 7d.

## *Restoration: or the Completion of*

the REFORMATION. By the Rev. ARCHER GURNEY, Paris.

CONTENTS:—1. The Real Presence; 2. The Eucharistic Sacrifice; 3. Prayers for the Departed.

Price 3s. 6d.; by Post 3s. 9d.

## *The Bible and its Interpreters.*

The Popular Theory; the Roman Theory; the Literary Theory; the Truth. By W. J. IRONS, D.D., Preb. of St. Paul's.

"It is one of those books which are never out of season, which men may at any time discuss, and which will always have a permanent interest and value. It is replete with learning, especially that patristic learning of which probably no one is a greater master than himself. It is full of interest, instruction and consolation."—*Churchman's Family Magazine*.

"To the ability displayed by the author in this work there is no need that we should testify. His acquaintance with the history of his subject is very comprehensive. His tone, earnest and uncompromising. There are sentiments and sentences of great beauty and force, over which the reader is likely to pause, that he may impress them upon his memory and his heart."—*Christian Times*.

"There is much here which believers and unbelievers will do well to ponder; but the book would be much more satisfactory, if the Church tower at the end had not been built so high as to cast a cold shade over the writer and his work."—*Western Times*.

"It is divided into four parts, and discusses many important questions in a spirit of true wisdom and learning. Dr. Irons' book displays much ability, and we recommend it as worthy of a careful study."—*Union Review*.

"Dr. Irons has put forth a valuable paper, containing a good deal of valuable information and not a little valuable thought compressed into a small compass; and biblical students, whether clerical or lay, will be gainers by the perusal of his pages."—*Church Times*.

"A very remarkable book. We heartily commend it to the attention especially of our clerical brethren, and of all who take an interest in the deep subjects it so ably grapples with."—*Church Review*.

"Dr. Irons propounds what is the true Catholic view, the opinion of the Church in all ages when viewed in the gross, and apart from temporary or occasional aberrations from it."—*Clerical Journal*.

"To a certain extent Dr. Irons' hand is against every man, but

chiefly he is severe upon that which he calls the popular theory, the monobiblical theory, the Chillingworth basis; and he effectually shows that is laid upon the sand. . . . — *Westminster Review*.

"Among the defenders of God's truth which the scepticism of our day has called forth, Dr. Irons will hold a distinguished place. This little volume should be in the hands of every thoughtful Christian who is desirous of having a satisfactory reason to give for the hope that is in him. . . . The true Catholic knows that 'the written Word and the Church are co-ordinate in the mission of truth to mankind.' — *Church and State Review*.

"This is an able and valuable little work. It is designed to combat, on the one hand, the prevalent notion that Christianity rests wholly and solely upon documentary proof; and, on the other, the idea that Christianity is wholly and solely based upon the Church. That there may be a Christianity which needs neither an entirely true Bible nor a Divinely-gifted Church is an idea, says the writer, which few in the 'religious world' have been yet able to grasp. That the two may be and are supplementary of each other, and mutually confirmatory, is the position defended. The subject is ably and well handled." — *Bristol Times*.

"The pages are characterized by that force of reasoning, lucidity of style, and religiousness of spirit for which he is famous. Dr. Irons hits the nail on the head of what he says of the Bible in its relation to the supernatural. We like his book very much." — *Journal of Sacred Literature*.

"Suffice it to say that Dr. Irons brings together a mass of information which can be turned to use and profit by the plainest reader; and he handles his facts with all the supple ease of a scholar." — *Gloucestershire Chronicle*.

Just published, price 4d.; by post, 5d.

(£1. 1s. per 100 for Parochial Distribution, if had direct from the Publisher.)

## *A Few Words as to the Reasons*

why ALL the Congregation ought to remain in Church until the end of the Service, whether they Communicate or not.

[Suitable for Parishes where the Clergy are desirous of re-establishing Weekly or more frequent celebrations of Holy Communion.]

Price 1s. 6d.; by post 1s. 7d.

## *Anglo-Romanism Unveiled:* or,

CANON OAKELEY AND DR. NEWMAN AT ISSUE WITH THE "CATHOLIC AND ROMAN" CHURCH, AND WITH ONE ANOTHER. A Letter addressed to the Rev. W. J. IRONS, D.D., as the Author of "The Bible and its Interpreters." By A LAYMAN.

"Written with shrewdness and sharpness, and ought to be added to any list of the literature produced by the 'Eirenicon.'" — *Union Review*.

Price 1s.; by Post 1s. 1d.

## *The Mystery of Bethlehem.* Three

Lectures, on the Source, the Manifestation, and the Effects of the INCARNATION. By Rev. W. BAIRD, St. Gabriel's Mission, Bromley, Middlesex.

"These Lectures are very decidedly above the average of even the better class of sermons, in learning, depth, and theological precision."—*Union Review*.

"Three clever lectures."—*Church Times*.

"The *Mystery of Bethlehem* takes a profound, and at the same time a devout view of that cardinal doctrine. A note elaborates the allusion in the text to the opposite Thomist and Scotist views on the subject, and sets forth very clearly and sensibly the outlines of each, and the reasons for distinctly adhering to the former. It is singular to find that the Scotist view,—the view adverse in tendency to right doctrine respecting the Atonement,—is said, by apparently good authority, to prevail among modern Roman Catholics."—*Guardian*.

"We have read it with great satisfaction. Considering its size, it is one of the clearest expositions of the vast and all-comprehensive doctrine of the Incarnation that we remember to have read. We hope this little book will have a large circulation."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"We can heartily commend Mr. Baird's lectures as thoroughly able, and worthy the author's well-deserved reputation."—*Church Review*.

"Sound in doctrine, and fervent in their tone of pious exhortation, these are sermons of a kind which we are very glad to welcome, and we may surely hope the best of any church or congregation in which such sermons as these have been listened to and appreciated. We are delighted to recommend it."—*Literary Churchman*.

Price 5s.; by Post 5s. 6d.

## *Redemption*: Some of the Aspects of the

Work of Christ considered in a Course of Sermons. By the Rev. RICHARD MEUX BENSON, M.A., Cowley, Oxon.

"Unusually thoughtful, and written with a connected aim."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

"Theologically, the line taken is assuredly that which the present times imperatively demand."—*Guardian*.

"For depth of view, fulness of Scriptural illustration, and tender piety, it must take a high place."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"Sermons of a very high order . . . issued as a contribution towards the more perfect exposition of the whole doctrine of Christ crucified, and most ably are they worked out. Their deep piety, clear thought, and vigorous language, will make them welcome to many readers."—*Literary Churchman*.

"Mr. Benson's thoughtful and well-reasoned sermons on '*Redemption*' deserve a careful criticism, more worthy of their depth and fulness than this passing notice."—*Church Review*.

## WORKS BY DR. NEALE,

PUBLISHED BY

J. T. HAYES.

THE LAST TWO WORKS OF THE LATE  
REV. J. M. NEALE, D.D.

Price 2s. 6d. ; by Post 2s. 9d.

*Original Sequences, Hymns, and*OTHER ECCLESIASTICAL VERSES. By the late Rev.  
Dr. NEALE, Sackville College, East Grinstead.

WITH

## PROLOGUE IN "DEAR MEMORY OF JOHN KEBLE."

"It had been long my wish, especially when I have had occasion to notice the great favour which God has bestowed on my translations from mediæval Hymnology, to collect some of my own Hymns and Sequences as a poor little offering to the Great Treasury. Laid aside, in Spring last, from all active work by a severe and dangerous illness, the wish was more strongly impressed on my mind, and I felt that no kind of composition could be more suitable for one who might soon be called to have done with earthly composition for ever."—*Preface.*

"No doubt the posthumous works of the great scholar, and elegant poet, and devout hymnologist, whom so lately we have seen laid down to sleep, will be numerous and valuable; but an especial tenderness must attach always to the little volume which reached us almost as soon as the hand that wrote it had become cold, and which shows (if indeed we could doubt it) that he who loved chiefly to sing of the "celestial Country," had his thoughts and affections drawn the more closely towards it as he neared that haven. Amid all his deeper works, his translations, his liturgiology, his histories, he is chiefly known and chiefly loved, by scholar as by peasant, for his

B 5

'Hymns of Home Sickness' (as the mediævalists quaintly called the longings after the heavenly country); and this, his latest work, shows us to the end that he was full himself of the thoughts where-with he has comforted so many weary souls, and whereby he has given shape and distinctiveness to dimly undefined images of the things which shall be hereafter. . . . We have been much struck by a sequence of All Souls, in which the mystical meaning of S. Paul's Shipwreck is well brought out, and which is especially telling from its close adherence, in many parts, to the words of Scripture. . . . We may particularise a 'Children's Sequence of All Saints' as being very good. We must not omit to notice the beauty of a sequence for Low Sunday, of which the poetry is exquisite, and which we would transfer to our pages were we not sure that all our readers will possess themselves of the last offering of Dr. Neale to the Church he loved so well."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"This is the last offering of a dying bed to the treasury of Christian song. The harp of our last departed bard had been silent long years before he sank to rest; he who has gone but now to join him swept the chorus to the latest moment of consciousness. That it was the last pledge of zeal and faith he would ever give on this side of Paradise he seems himself to have foreboded from a few prefatory words. Most sweetly, most fitly the volume opens with a prologue in dear memory of John Keble, which might serve for the writer's own elegy. The dying poet speaking to the dead one, the greatest of the English hymnodists singing the dirge of the greatest of English meditative bards, and leaving none behind him able to sing his own unworthy strains, is a singular and mournful picture. The last, and by far the longest poem in the volume, is the legend of the Seven Sleepers of Ephesus, one of his very latest compositions, and specially addressed to his children, the Sisters of St. Margaret's. In this volume of Sequences all is Original poetry."—*Church Times*.

"A good man's last words are always precious; and in this dainty little volume we have the last words of one who was wise as well as good, a poet as well as a divine—the late Rev. J. M. Neale. Many of the touching and beautiful pages were the actual work of his death-bed. Many of the new hymns and verses are quite worthy of the gifted writer of 'Jerusalem the Golden,' and especially the opening lines, 'In memory of John Keble.'"—*Church and State Review*.

"The Seven Sleepers of Ephesus' is a very noble subject, and the poem is as noble."—*Literary Churchman*.

Price 1s.; by Post 1s. 2d.

## *Stabat Mater Speciosa: Full of* BEAUTY STOOD THE MOTHER. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

"The companion sequence to the *Stabat Mater dolorosa* is now presented to the reader, *Stabat Mater speciosa*; this the hymn of the

Cradle, as the other of the Cross. . . I cannot but wonder that it has never hitherto appeared in an English translation; nor even, so far as I know, been reprinted in this country."—*Preface*.

"Is not merely a good hymn, but a beautiful poem."—*Church and State Review*.

"We turn now to the great Translator's last effort in that arena where his most famous prizes were won,—an effort dating but a few weeks before he was himself translated from earthly speech to that of Paradise. Not only has the hymn never before appeared in *any English version*, but the very text is printed now for the first time in this country. We shall not quote from it, because a verse or two of it gives no satisfactory notion of the whole poem. *Finis* may be written now at the close of his songs on earth, but rather in the spirit and fashion of scholars of old, we would end them with the words, 'Glory be to God,' remembering that the song he is now learning is stronger and sweeter than any he sang here, and that disease and death can never hush it more."—*Church Times*.

"'Stabat Mater Speciosa' is a devotional and graceful composition. Of the translation we need not speak; it is as perfect as Dr. Neale's works of the kind always are."—*Ecclesiastic*.

\*\*\* The above were the last efforts of Dr. Neale on his sick bed, and were only finished two or three days before his decease.

Just published, Price 6d. by post 7d.

(The Profits to be given to the "NEALE MEMORIAL FUND.")

## *A Sermon on the Death of the*

REV. J. M. NEALE. By REV. E. MALLESON, Baldersby.

"It is a thoughtful, discriminating, and yet hearty and outspoken funeral sermon, upon one whose efficient services in the great work of re-Catholicising England are already fully appreciated."—*Union Review*.

"A good and touching memorial sermon on Dr. Neale, treating of his life as a special example of the life of *Faith*."—*Literary Churchman*.

Just published, in cloth 1s.; by Post 1s. 1d.

## *The Invalid's Hymn-book: being*

a Selection of Appropriate Hymns, Original or Translated, by the late REV. J. M. NEALE. With a Preface by the REV. Dr. LITTLEDALE.



EIGHTH AND NEW EDITION, BEAUTIFULLY PRINTED ON  
TONED PAPER.

Price 2s. in cloth; by Post 2s. 2d.; In Calf 7s. 6d.; by post  
7s. 9d.; In Morocco 8s. 6d.; by post 8s. 9d.

## *The Rhythm of Bernard of Mor-*

LAIX, on the CELESTIAL COUNTRY. Edited and Trans-  
lated by the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

Also the Cheap Edition. Price 8d.; by Post 9d.

“And Bernard, minstrel of the Cross;  
And Bernard, who with home-sick view  
Counting all other joys but loss,  
JERUSALEM THE GOLDEN drew.”—NEALE’S *Original Sequences*.

“A hymn which has now such a place in the affections of Christian people as has ‘JERUSALEM the GOLDEN,’ is so priceless an acquisition that I must need rejoice to have been the first to recall from oblivion the poem that yielded it.”—ARCHBISHOP TRENCH, *Sacred Latin Poetry*.

Dr. Neale says in the Preface,—“While I would continue to express my most deep thankfulness to Him from Whom all good things come, for the ever-increasing favour with which the Cluniac’s verses have been received in the most recent Hymnals, I am yet more thankful that they have been permitted to solace the death-beds of so many of His servants, and not seldom to have supplied them with the last earthly language of praise. . . . Bernard would have been surprised, could he have foreseen by how many varying sects his poem would be sung. The course of a few days brought me requests to use it from a minister of the Scotch Establishment, a Swedenborgian minister, and a hymn-book for the use of the ‘American Evangelical Lutheran Church,’ sanctioned by the ‘Ministerium of Pennsylvania,’ which extracts largely from it.”

“We cannot but rejoice to announce another edition of a poem, now more than seven hundred years old, which seems always to have stirred the hearts of the faithful, and which seems never to have echoed more widely from ‘soul to soul’ than now. English churchmen and churchwomen should not forget that if Bernard was born at Morlaix, he was of English parents.”—*Literary Churchman*.

“Another edition of Dr. Neale’s magnificent translation of the magnificent ‘Rhythm of S. Bernard’ is published. This makes one edition a year since it first came out, and we predict the same rate of reproduction for many years yet to come.”—*Church Review*.

Also, the companion Volume to the above, price 1s. 6d. ; by  
Post 1s. 7d.

## *Hymns, chiefly Mediæval, on the* JOYS and GLORIES of PARADISE. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

"In 'Hymns on the Joys and Glories of Paradise.' Dr. Neale has presented us with a worthy companion volume to his well-known 'Rhythm of Bernard of Morlaix on the Celestial Country,' which we believe will soon become a general favourite."—*Churchman*.

"It is a very choice collection, and we should like to quote largely, but the variety which even this collection embraces, renders it difficult to know what to choose."—*Literary Churchman*.

"The name of Dr. Neale carries us to the Greek Church in a moment, beyond the Seven Hills and the great spiritual power which still sits on them like an ancient sovereign who unites the dignity and tremulousness of age. In the little work before us, however, Dr. Neale confines himself to the West, without finding himself inconveniently restricted. He has intended this volume as a companion to his translation of 'Bernard of Cluny,' but it is much more miscellaneous in its contents, which were it not for the gravity and unity of their subject, would be almost grotesquely varied."—*Guardian*.

"Dr. Neale has added another item to the great debt of gratitude Churchmen already owe him for having shown the inestimable treasures which lie hid in the storehouse of Catholic hymnody by the publication of 'Hymns on the Joys and Glories of Paradise.' The present little volume is by no means behind its predecessors in value or interest."—*Church Review*.

"This little book contains some perfect gems, and if Dr. Neale had effected nothing more than the rescue of "Jerusalem, my happy home!" from the hands of the Covenanters he would have deserved our lively gratitude."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"Perhaps the highest interest in the book is that excited by the beautiful 'Jerusalem, my happy Home,' the original of the far inferior dissenting hymn beginning with the same words. It is now known to be the composition of a Roman Catholic sufferer in the persecution under Elizabeth, or James I. The version which Dr. Neale gives us of *Nec quisquam oculis vidit*, 'Eye hath never seen the glory,' marks very clearly the later style of his translations, and exemplifies well that phase first plainly marked by his 'Hymns of the Eastern Church.'"—*Church Times*.

"Dr. Neale revels in the difficulties of his task, and vanquishes them with a triumphant defiance of labour which nothing but an intense interest in his subject could prompt, it has been reserved for Dr. Neale to have accomplished—for it was to him that the difficult task of innovation was reserved—a revolution in English Hymnody. To compare the hymns which, in all sorts of churches, are now sung with the orthodox Tate and Brady of thirty years ago, is a fact of the largest value, when we attempt to estimate Church progress."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

Price 6s.; by Post 6s. 4d.

## Notes, Ecclesiological and Picturesque, on DALMATIA, CROATIA, ISTRIA, and STYRIA, with a VISIT to MONTENEGRO. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

"We desire to commend the volume not only to Ecclesiologists, and to students of Church history or of Church ritual, or to those of large and Christian temper who love to widen their sympathies with genuine Christian people living under other conditions of life than their own, and, it may be, conditions more unfavourable in some respects to truth at least though hardly to piety—but even to the wider circle of merely curious readers of amusing travels. A country more abounding in the picturesque, or in varieties of manners or of costume, or in buildings more interesting, both ecclesiastically and as antiquities, it would be hard to find. It is one, also, untrodden by English tourists, and not so described by the one or two eminent travellers—Sir Gardner Wilkinson, for instance—who have partially travelled the same ground, as not to leave room for Dr. Neale. And, finally, Dr. Neale's fashion of travelling, or his temper, bring him so thoroughly into contact with the people themselves among whom he goes as to double at once both the interest and the value of his narrative."—*Guardian*.

Price 2s.; by Post 2s. 1d.

## Text Emblems: a Series of Twelve

beautiful Designs, by DALZIEL, illustrative of the Mystical Interpretation of as many Verses from the Old Testament. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

"A most thoroughly successful little work. It consists of twelve original and very spirited designs, illustrating, after the mediæval manner, the spiritual meaning of as many passages of Holy Scripture."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"Mr. Hayes has sent us his new and rather adventurous effort—'Text Emblems.' This is an attempt to represent to the eye, through the medium of engravings, some of those spiritual interpretations of Holy Scripture for which the early and mediæval Church was famous. The publisher deserves credit for the very creditable execution of his little work."—*Church Review*.

Now Ready, Third and New Edition, price 2s. 6d. ;  
by Post 2s. 7d.

## *The Hymns of the Eastern Church:*

Translated by late Rev. J. M. NEALE, D.D., Sackville College.

"They are literally, I believe, the *only* English versions of any part of the treasures of Oriental Hymnology."—*Preface*.

"The gem of the volume is a 'Hymn for the second week of the Great Fast,' by S. Andrew of Crete, which will probably become as generally adopted as the author's translation of S. Bernard. Another excellent hymn is entitled 'Idiometer for all Saints,' by John Damascene. There is also a beautiful hymn of the Transfiguration by S. Cosmas."—*Ecclesiastic*.

"Their great beauty in the original, the successful manner in which they have been translated, the demand which their publication so well supplies, have together tended to obtain for them the well-deserved *imprimatur* of Catholics in general."—*Union Review*.

In Greek, price 1s. each ; by Post 1s. 1d.

BY THE LATE REV. J. M. NEALE.

*The Liturgy of S. Mark.*

*The Liturgy of S. Basil.*

*The Liturgy of S. Chrysostom.*

*The Liturgy of S. James.*

"It would be highly profitable for the Clergy at large to study these documents now presented in so cheap a form ; it would also revive their knowledge of Greek, which pastoral labour often causes to be neglected."—*Clerical Journal*.

## *The Translations of the Primitive*

LITURGIES OF S. MARK, S. CLEMENT, S. CHRYSOSTOM, S. JAMES, and S. BASIL. With Introduction and Appendices ; by the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

"We have here the concise results of a really profound knowledge

of the subject treated, and this in the most unpretending form.”—*Guardian*.

“To an honest and reflective mind the perusal of this little volume will be attended with more benefit than many a formal essay on Eucharistical doctrine; and it has special value as a help to devotion, which could not be shared by merely a scientific treatise.”—*Christian Remembrancer*.

“We are glad to perceive that Dr. Neale has been induced ‘by the united advice of all ecclesiastical reviews,’ to translate the Primitive Liturgies, and to render these pure sources of Eucharistic doctrine more acceptable to the many.

“The work will, we trust, meet with the extensive circulation which it deserves as a most useful boon in these days of doubt, trial, and perplexity to many. The introduction will be found very valuable, as also the two appendices—the one containing the formulæ of Institution, as they occur in every extant Liturgy, and the other, the more interesting, the intercessions for the faithful departed which occur in the whole body of Liturgies. There is also a very interesting frontispiece, with explanation, from one of the series of nine plates in a beautiful MS. of the Greek Liturgies now in the Vatican. It is a representation of the ‘Great Entrance,’ which is ‘the grandest piece of ritual in the Eastern Church and mystically represents the Incarnation.”—*The Union*.

“‘Translations of the Primitive Liturgies.’ We congratulate Dr. Neale on the completion of this part of his numerous labours, and the Church also in having at hand so valuable a collection of ancient devotions. The book will be useful as a contribution to ecclesiastical history; but we prefer to introduce it now for the piety which everywhere breathes in its pages, and we recommend it as a closet companion to the clergy. The introduction contains some important historical matter.”—*Clerical Journal*.

Parts I. and II., price 2s. 6d. each; by Post 2s. 8d.

## *The Ancient Liturgies of the*

GALLICAN CHURCH. Now first Collected, with an Introductory Dissertation, Notes, and various Readings, together with Parallel Passages from the Roman, Ambrosian, and Mozarabic Rites. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE and Rev. G. H. FORBES.

Price 2s.; by Post 2s. 1d.

## *“The Christian Nurse;” and her*

MISSION IN THE SICK ROOM. Translated from the French of Father Gautrelet, by one of the Sisters of St. Margaret's, East Grinstead; and Edited by the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

## DEVOTIONS, MEDITATIONS, &c.

---

**New, and Second Edition ; Price 1s. 6d. ; by Post 1s. 7d,**  
*Especially suitable to those who remain during the entire Service,*  
*whether they communicate or not.*

### *Manual of Devotions for the*

BLESSED SACRAMENT, ATTENDANCE, COMMUNION,  
 PREPARATION, and THANKSGIVING. With Preface by  
 the Rev. FREDERICK G. LEE, D.C.L.

"As a practical manual,—notwithstanding more recent publications,—we quite believe it stands second to none. The arrangement of it is simple and Catholic. We have no hesitation in commending it as the best of the many excellent manuals now in use."—*Union Review*.

Price 1s.; by Post 1s. 1d.

### *Prayers for Children ; with*

DEVOTIONS for the HOLY SACRIFICE, HYMNS, &c.,

By Rev. F. G. LEE, D.C.L. With Frontispiece.

"Superior in fitness for children, in matter, type, and size. . . . Understandable by a child of six."—*Church Times*.

"'Lee's Prayers' will meet the wishes of growing numbers of parents and others who have the education of the young in their care. The little book has a nice selection of hymns."—*Church Review*.

Just Published, Price 4d. ; by Post 5d.

### *The Little Hours for Busy Per-*

SONS. Arranged by an ASSOCIATE of the SISTERHOOD of S.  
 JOHN BAPTIST, CLEWER.

"An exceedingly small pocket manual. Both the idea and execution are good: the book occupies but little room, and contains—which is a recommendation to Re-unionists—the Prayer of the A.P.U.C."—*Union Review*.

"Is a short collection of devotions, mostly from the Psalms and Prayer Book, which busy persons will find both useful and handy. The book will go into the waistcoat pocket."—*Guardian*.

Price 2d. ; by Post 3d.

## *Short Prayers for Busy Men and*

WOMEN. Translated from a MS. in the Bodleian Library, Oxford.

Price 2s. 6d. ; by Post 2s. 8d.

## *Guide for Advent.* By Rev. JAMES

SKINNER, Incumbent of Newland, Worcestershire, and late Senior Curate of St. Barnabas', Pimlico.

Vol. I. 4s. 6d., Vol. II. 5s. ; Postage of each Vol. 4d. extra.

## *The Canonical Hours,* according to

the Use of the GUILD of ST. ALBAN.

Price 1s. ; by Post, 1s. 1d.

## *Household Prayers :* with a Preface by

the Rt. Rev. THE LORD BISHOP OF OXFORD.

*The profits of this Work to be appropriated for the benefit in Sickness of the Workwomen of the London Dressmaking Company.*

“‘Household Prayers,’ with Preface by Bishop of Oxford, do not need the recommendation their origin gives them. They are at once plain, varied, and so framed with responses, and the like, as to require the co-operation of all present.”—*Guardian*.

“The Bishop of Oxford’s ‘Household Prayers,’ or rather those which he has formally sanctioned, founded on a true liturgical idea, are full of sound Catholic sentiments, and being framed in language which is at once plain and forcible, may be strongly recommended for family use.”—*Union Review*.

“An excellent little book of morning and evening prayer for a week. They appear to us the very pattern of what household prayers should be.”—*Literary Churchman*.

“This collection is a good one; comprehensive, yet brief.”—*Clerical Journal*.

Price 3s.; by Post 3s. 4d.

# *The Reformed Monastery; or the*

LOVE OF JESUS: A Sure and Short, Pleasant and Easy Way to Heaven; in Méditations, Directions, and Resolutions to Love and Obey Jesus unto Death. With a Preface by the Rev. F. G. LEE, D.C.L., F.S.A., Domestic Chaplain to the Earl of Morton. (Being a Reprint of the said Work by Dr. BOILEAU, Chaplain to Dr. FELL, Bishop of Oxford, 1675)

"Mr. Lee has done good service in rescuing this exceedingly choice volume of meditations on the 'Love of Jesus' from the oblivion into which it had been allowed to fall. Apart from its great value for devotional purposes, it serves to show that for works instinct with the deepest spirituality and 'unction,' in its best sense, we need not necessarily have recourse to the production of ascetic writers of the Roman Communion, as some persons are disposed to fancy. The first edition was published in 1675, and a fifth edition was called for in 1681. The present reprint forms a neat volume of about 300 pages."—*Church Times*.

"A devotional work of great beauty, clearness, and originality not taken from Roman Catholic sources, but from the pen of one of Bishop Fell's chaplains. We strongly recommend it to our readers."—*John Bull*.

"A thoroughly Anglican volume of meditations—so remarkably popular towards the end of the seventeenth century as to have gone through five editions in as many years. Thoroughly systematic, eminently deep and full, while abounding in beautiful thoughts and suggestive sentiments, it will be of great value to all whose lives have been framed on the model of our own English system; which, if not high, is deep, sound, sober, and practical."—*Union Review*.

"Was written by a Protestant divine, yet it is cast in the mould of the old Church."—*Clerical Journal*.

"It has often been asked," says the Rev. F. G. Lee in the Preface, 'whether or not there could be found original treatises written by members of the Church of England during the past three hundred years which, in republication, might assist to deepen the great principles of Catholic truth energizing amongst us, and to promote the practice of meditation and prayer.' The present republication is one answer to this question, and great thanks are due to the Editor for it."—*Church Review*.

"In itself it is a valuable book, making much of the spirit which was revived, or rather reproduced, in the Devotional Manuals edited by Dr. Pusey; and it is curious in another aspect, as showing how a Church revival always takes the same practical shape."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

"The 'Reformed Monastery' is a devotional work of the English



Church. The cloister it recommends is the Catholic Church, and its rule the rule of Christian living, and indirectly it is a treatise against monasticism. This is, however, only its form. The book is not written to condemn any false and narrow rule, but is a series of pious and thoughtful meditations upon the true one, a good specimen of the religious tone still surviving when it was written, and a profitable book for all times."—*Guardian*.

Price 1s. ; by Post 1s. 1d.

*The Sorrow of Jesus.* A Companion  
for HOLY WEEK ; intended for those who can spare but a short  
time for the use of such Devotions.

Price 1d., or 6d. per dozen.

*Graces,* as used in S. Barnabas' College,  
Pimlico.

Price 3d., on a Sheet.

*Helps for the Guidance of a Soul*  
THAT SEEKS TO LOVE JESUS PERFECTLY IN SUFFERING. Sold for the benefit of the House of Rest, Hurst-  
pierpoint.

Price 1d., or 7s. per hundred, on Card or Paper.

*Morning and Evening Prayers.*  
FOR PAROCHIAL DISTRIBUTION, or for SCHOOL CHILDREN.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

*Household Devotion.* COMPLINE, after  
the Use of SARUM.

Price 1d., or 7s. per hundred.

*Prayers* to be used by a CONGREGATION for  
THEIR CLERGY when SICK.

Price 8d. a dozen; or 50 for 1s.

*A Prayer for the Preservation of the True  
Doctrine of the Holy Eucharist.* By the Rev. J. KEBLE, M.A.

Price 1d., or 7s. per hundred.

*Litanies for the Sick.*

Price 4d.; by Post 5d.

*The Life of Faith.* A Book of Meditations. Translated from the French; with a Preface by W. U. R.

"Intended as a help for those Christians whose wish is to seek God with their whole heart."—*Preface.*

Price 1s.; by Post 1s. 1d. (from the Publisher only.)

*S. Barnabas', Pimlico :* In Festo Dedicationis, and other Poems.

By the same Author, 1d. each ; by Post 2d.

*A Chorister's Morning Hymn.*

By the same, 3d.; by Post 4d.

*The Freed Captives.* A Poem.

Price 2s. 6d.; by Post 2s. 7d.

*St. Agnes' Eve :* a Song. The Words by ALFRED TENNYSON, Esq., D.C.L., Poet Laureate. The Music by Mrs. FREDERICK GEO. LEE.

Price 4d.; by Post 5d.

*Merry Bells are ringing.* A Christmas Carol. The Words by the Right Rev. Dr. JENNER, Bishop of Dunedin. Set to Ancient Melody, with Harmony for Four Voices, in short score, by the same.

Price 1d., or 7s. per hundred.

*“Jerusalem the Golden.”* Set to Music by the Right Rev. Dr. JENNER, Bishop of Dunedin.

Price 3d.; by Post 4d.

*Litany to the Holy Ghost:* with Appropriate Music. Specially itsuable for SCHOOLS and MISSION SERVICES.

Price 1d.; or 7s. per 100.

*Simple Questions for Self-EXAMINATION;* with appropriate Prayers.

## T A L E S .

Just published, price 1s. 6d. ; by Post, 1s. 8d.

## *Oswald, the Young Artist.* A Tale

for Boys. (Incukating the necessity of a reverential attention to all the details incumbent on those engaged in assisting in the Public Worship of the Church, and showing the blessings which certainly ensue to those who strive to fulfil the obligations of the same.) By the Author of "The Boy Martyr," "Nedewode Forest," "The Boy-Prince of Mercia," &c.

"We would specially recommend 'Oswald,' because in it the entire Catholic system is so prominently brought forward; in addition to which the story is most interesting, and sure to take with boys with the least religious feeling about them. To choristers it will be found to be especially valuable."—*Church Times*.

"Calculated to be specially attractive and popular. The teaching and principles of the book are of a higher character than usual, while the interest is kept up to the last page."—*Union Review*.

"A very pretty, pleasantly written story, and one which may well be bought as a gift-book for boys."—*Literary Churchman*.

"Good practical tales for boys are scarce. Lads instinctively rebel against softness and sentiment, and for this reason it is far more difficult to reach a boy's heart than a girl's. The author has succeeded in giving us a tale of highly religious and moral tone. Catholic in its doctrine, and fervent in language, calculated to rouse a boy's sense of honour, and to encourage high-souled acts of self-discipline. Moral courage and Catholic privileges are made really attractive, instead of the conceit and self-concentration, falsely called manliness and courage, which are often set forward as examples to boys."—*Ecclesiastic*.

Price 2s. 6d. ; by Post 2s. 8d.

“ *Our Doctor's Note-Book ;*” being  
Twelve Tales, by the Authoress of “*TALES OF KIRKBECK,*”  
“*ALICE BERESFORD,*” &c. &c. ; viz. :—

- I. The Outcast.
- II. Cottage Sorrows.
- III. A Sea Story.
- IV. A Chapter on Old Women.
- V. The Drunkard's Wife.
- VI. Laith Butts.
- VII. A Hospital Romance.
- VIII. Laneside.
- IX. The “Stranger's Corner.”
- X. The Furnesses.
- XI. Edy's Illness.
- XII. The Doctor's Round.

“The facts being real, there has been little attempt to work them up ; and their form is rather that of sketches than of tales. The shipwreck told in the ‘Sea Story’ took place a few years since on the Cornish coast ; and the ‘Hospital Romance,’ however improbable it may seem, was a real incident that fell under the author's own notice.”  
—*Preface.*

“‘Our Doctor's Note Book :’ by the author of ‘Tales of Kirkbeck, &c.,—contains a dozen brief sketches from real life, and mostly among the poor. As usual with this writer, there is a strong vein of cheerful resignation, as well as practical piety, running throughout. These stories, as the title-page intimates, are supposed to be told by the Village Doctor, as the result of his own experience.”—*English Churchman.*

“Has originality enough in its simple facts, and contains materials sufficient to make twenty times over a fashionable three-volume novel.”—*Athenæum.*

Price 1s. 6d. in cloth ; by Post 1s. 7d. Paper cover 1s. ;  
by Post 1s. 1d.

*God still works Miracles.* And other  
Tales. Translated from the German of Töchter Album.

Price 5s. ; by Post 5s. 6d., 470 pages.

## *Sir Henry Appleton* : A Tale of the Great Rebellion. By the Rev. W. E. HEYGATE.

"We heartily recommend this book to those who care to know something of the state of society in those times. It is purely historical, and the incidents and characters are not wanting in liveliness and spirit, nor the dialogues and remarks in point and humour."—*Guardian*.

"The book is one of those sound, wholesome, instructive, and entertaining historical tales which we are thankful for."—*Clerical Journal*.

"The story ranges over a space of time which is full of so many stirring events, which Mr. Heygate portrays with the pen of a Churchman who loves King Charles without making him a perfect hero."—*Literary Churchman*.

Price 1s. ; by Post 1s. 2d. In Cloth 2s. ; by Post 2s. 2d.

## *The Farm of Aptonga* : a Story for Children of the Times of S. Cyprian. By the late Rev. J. M. NEALE.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

---

Price 1s. 6d.; by Post 1s. 7d.

### *Duties of Fathers and Mothers.*

By ARVISENET. Edited by the Rev. G. C. WHITE,  
Incumbent of S. Barnabas', Pimlico.

"Those who are acquainted with Arvisenet's 'Memorial of the Priestly Life' will be interested to observe how the author succeeded in coming down to the level of domestic life, even in the humbler classes. His treatise on 'The Duties of Fathers and Mothers,' edited by Mr. White of S. Barnabas', Pimlico, is a most simple and practical exhortation, yet lacking nothing of the warmth and vigour of the writer."—*Ecclesiastic*.

Price 2s. 6d.; by Post 2s. 8d.

### *The Departed, and other Verses.* By

Mrs. FREDERICK GEORGE LEE.

"Mrs. Lee will not hold an inferior place in the ranks of our sacred minstrels. Her verses are always refreshing, at times very tender and beautiful."—*John Bull*.

"This modest little volume contains several short poems written in easy and agreeable rhythm, and redolent of devotional feeling."—*Church Work*.

"It is a delightful volume of unconsciously religious poetry (for it ranks above mere verse), and therein is its specialty and peculiar charm. Mrs. Lee is no mere versifier, but a writer (it may be of restricted subject-matter, and of a limited range of thought) who has produced poetry that has the genuine *ring* which proclaims it fit for the poetic currency, and which will purchase for her no unworthy position amongst the minor poets of the day."—*Church Review*.

"Mrs. F. G. Lee shews herself to be a graceful and pleasing writer. The high ritualistic touches which the poems contain are often introduced very effectively, and are perfectly natural in Mrs. F. G. Lee."—*Guardian*.

Price 5s. ; by Post 5s. 6d.

## *The Way of the Wilderness by the*

RED SEA. A Journal in the East. By Rev. JAMES SKINNER, late of S. Barnabas', Pimlico, now Incumbent of Newland, Worcestershire. 4to. (Six Illustrations.)

"The title of this handsome volume gives some idea of its contents, which, though fragmentary in character, are by no means devoid of interest. The illustrations are drawn with great taste, and we doubt not are accurate, adding greatly to the interest of what would be, without them a somewhat sketchy, but very interesting and readable volume."—*The Union*.

Just published, 6d. ; by Post 7d.

## *An Account of All Saints' Church,*

MARGARET STREET, CAVENDISH SQUARE; with a Complete Table of the Times of the Services throughout the Year; and a Summary of all the Charities in connexion with this Church.

Price 4s. ; by Post 4s. 6d.

## *Hymns for the Christian Seasons ;*

ADVENT TO TRINITY. With suitable TUNES, principally composed and the whole arranged by CHRISTOPHER E. WILLING, Organist of All Saints' Church, Margaret Street, Cavendish Square.

"Any work from such a quarter is sure to be interesting and valuable ; and we strongly recommend it to those of the clergy who desire *special* hymns and music for the different seasons."—*Union Review*.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

## *Why do we prize Externals ?* A

Sermon by Rev. JAMES SKINNER, at S. Barnabas', Pimlico.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

## *The Will of God our Sanctifica-*

tion. A Sermon at S. Paul's, Knightsbridge. With Preface in Defence of its Delivery. By the Rev. C. GUTCH, B.D.



Price 4d. ; by Post 5d.

*The Responsibility of Christian*PRIVILEGES. The Rev. J. EDWARDS' Farewell Sermon  
at S. Paul's, Knightsbridge.

By the Same, price 4d. ; by Post 5d.

*Our Bounden Duty and Service.*A Village Sermon to the Newly-Confirmed, at Prestbury, near  
Cheltenham.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

*The Source of Sanctity.* A Sermonby the Rev. T. THELLUSSON CARTER (Cleric), preached  
at S. Barnabas', Pimlico.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

*A Sermon* on the Re-opening of theParish Church at Prestbury, Cheltenham. By the Hon. and  
Rev. R. LIDDELL.

Price 6d. ; by Post 7d.

*A Sermon* on the Opening of the Tem-porary Chapel of St. Mary Magdalene, Paddington. By the  
Rev. W. J. E. BENNETT.

Price 1s. 6d. ; by Post 1s. 7d.

*Perversions to Rome :* Guidance intoTruth. By the Rev. JAMES SKINNER, Newland  
Malvern.

Price 1s. 6d. each ; Carte de Visite Size 1s. each.

(To be had of the Publisher only.)

*Six Exterior and Interior Views*

of S. BARNABAS' CHURCH, Pimlico.

Price 4d.; by Post 5d.

*An English Version of "Viri*

*VENERABILES, SACERDOTES DEI."* Being a Metrical Charge to the Priesthood; to which is appended an adaptation of the hymn, "*Christe, deceto Patria Institutus,*" &c.

Price 3d.; by post 4d.

*Confession consistent with Holy*

*SCRIPTURE, THE CHURCH, AND REASON.* By an M.A. of Cambridge.

Price 9d.; by Post 10d.

*The Validity of the Holy Orders*

*OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND.* By the Rev. J. OLD-KNOW, Bordesley.

Price 9d.; by Post 10d.

*An Apology for the Sign of the*

*CROSS*, in reference to the Judgment on Ornaments in the Arches Court. By a Priest of the Church of England.

Price 3d. Monthly; by Post 4d.

*Church-Work.* The Monthly Paper of

the Guild of S. Alban. Vols. I. to III. 5s. each; Vol. IV. 7s.

"*Church Work*," the monthly paper of the 'Guild of S. Alban,' continues to give its readers many papers of interest, full of practical suggestions, and is still conducted with that eye to sobriety of feeling and action characteristic of a considerable school in the Church of England."—*Union Review*.

Preparing, price 9d.; by Post 10d., a Revised Edition of

*The Constitutions of the Guild of*  
S. Alban.

Just Published, 6d.; by Post 7d.

## *The Lost Treasures of the Church*

RECLAIMED. By W. P. MANN, Esq., Author of "FROM CRADLE TO THE GRAVE."

Price 3s. 6d.; by Post 3s. 8d.

## *"The Seven Deadly Sins," and "Fruits of Penitential Sorrow."*

Two Courses of Sermons by the Hon. and Rev. R. LIDDELL.

(Each course separately, 2s.; by Post 2s. 2d.)

Also separate Sermons by the same Author, price 6d. each;  
by post 7d.

## *Christian Moderation.*

## *Christ the Caster-out of Unclean SPIRITS.*

## *The Commemorative Sacrifice of THE EUCHARIST.*

Price 2s.; by Post 2s. 2d. Cheap Edition 1s.;  
by Post 1s. 1d.

## *Lectures on Church Principles.*

Delivered at Norwich and Ipswich; viz:—

- I. Church Principles, Bible Principles. Rev. Edward Monro.
- II. The True Spirit of the Prayer-Book. Rev. E. Harston.
- III. Apostolical Succession. Rev. J. Oldknow.
- IV. Church Principles Tested by their Results. Rev. Dr. Littledale.
- V. Catholic, not Roman Catholic. Rev. W. P. Ward.
- VI. Reformation, not Deformation. Rev. J. C. Chambers.
- VII. Secessions to Rome. Rev. Dr. Littledale.
- VIII. Use and Importance of Ritual. Rev. C. J. Le Geyt.
- IX. Ritual, the Teaching of Truth. Rev. C. J. Le Geyt.

Price 6d. per dozen.

*A Reprint of the Seventh Canon*  
of the English Church, on the Propriety of "BOWING TO THE ALTAR."

Price 2s. 6d. per 100.

*A Form to be filled up by Pa-*  
rishioners before a Baptism; Specifying where the child was born; when to be baptized; child's proposed Christian name; name and abode of parents; and names of Godfathers and Godmothers, &c., &c.

Price 3d.; by Post 4d.

TO THE CHILDREN OF THE CHURCH.

*A Child's Story-Book.* Written by  
a Child.

---

Suitable for Large Households, Public Institutions, &c.

Price 10s. 6d.; by Post 11s.

*Family Expenditure :* A Concise and  
Easy Mode of Keeping an Account of Disbursements, whether of the Household or of the Family; so arranged that every Weekly, Quarterly, and Annual proportion of the same may be seen at a glance, over a period of twenty years.

# IMPORTANT FORTHCOMING WORK

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION, TO  
HIS GRACE THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

In the Press, 8vo., about 500 pp. (not to exceed 15s. to  
Subscribers).

## THE Validity of the Holy Orders OF THE Church of England

Stated and Vindicated both Theologically and Historically. With Original and other Documents, being a Reply to the various Objections to the Form and Mode of Anglican Ordinations during the past Three Centuries, &c. &c. This volume, in which the Author has been assisted by eminent Roman Catholic and Oriental Theologians, as well as by distinguished Anglican Divines and Liturgiologists, will contain a complete *resumé* of the facts and arguments necessary to prove that the Church of England has preserved all that is necessary for valid Sacerdotal Ordination and true Consecration; and is essentially at one with every other portion of the Christian Family, in teaching and practice as to the nature and character of the same.

BY THE  
REV. FREDERICK GEORGE LEE, D.C.L., F.S.A.,  
DOMESTIC CHAPLAIN TO THE EARL OF MORTON.

---

\*.\* MR. HAYES will be glad to receive the Names of Subscribers to  
the above-mentioned Work.

---

J. SWIFT, Regent Press, 55, King Street, Regent Street, W.









